

OFFICIAL STATEMENT  
Dated August 25, 2021

NEW ISSUE – BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY

Enhanced/Unenhanced Ratings:  
S&P: “AAA” / “A”  
PSF: “Guaranteed”

(See “THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM” and “OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION – Municipal Bond Rating” herein.)

*In the opinion of Special Tax Counsel (defined herein), assuming continuing compliance by the District (defined below) after the date of initial delivery of the Bonds (defined below) with certain covenants contained in the Bond Order (defined below) and subject to the matters set forth under “TAX MATTERS” herein, interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof pursuant to Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date of initial delivery of the Bonds, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. See “TAX MATTERS” herein.*

*The District has designated the Bonds as “Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations” for financial institutions.*



**\$7,675,000**  
**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Throckmorton County)**  
**UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2021**

**Dated Date: September 15, 2021**  
**Interest to Accrue from Date of Delivery**

**Due: as shown on page -ii-**

**AUTHORITY FOR ISSUANCE** ... The Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021 (the “Bonds”) are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas (the “State” or “Texas”), including Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1) of the Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District (the “District”) on May 1, 2021 (the “Election”), and a bond order (the “Bond Order”) adopted by the Board of Trustees of the District (the “Board”) on August 25, 2021. The Bonds are direct and voted obligations of the District, payable from a continuing direct annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limitation as to rate or amount, on all taxable property located within the District. See “THE BONDS - Authority for Issuance” herein.

**PAYMENT TERMS** ... Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the date of initial delivery to the Underwriter (detailed below), will be payable on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing February 15, 2022, until stated maturity or prior redemption, and will be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered obligations in the principal denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. The definitive Bonds will be registered and delivered to Cede & Co. as the nominee of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York (“DTC”), pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein. DTC will act as the initial securities depository (the “Securities Depository”) for the Bonds. Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in multiples of \$5,000 of the principal amount or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Bonds (“Beneficial Owners”) will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, principal of and interest on the Bonds (as applicable) will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, UMB Bank, N.A., Dallas, Texas, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. See “BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM” herein.

**PURPOSE** ... Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used: (i) for the construction, improvement, renovation, and equipment of school buildings in the District; (ii) to make a deposit into the capitalized interest fund; and (iii) to pay for the costs of issuance of the Bonds. See “PLAN OF FINANCING – Sources and Uses of Funds” herein.

The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program, which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of the State of Texas approves the Bonds. See “THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM” herein.

---

**For Maturity Schedule, Principal Amounts and Maturity Values, Interest Rates, Initial Yields, CUSIP Numbers, and Redemption Provisions for the Bonds, see page -ii- herein**

---

*The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as, and if issued and received by the underwriter named below (the “Underwriter”) and are subject to the approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the opinion of Haynes and Boone, LLP, Houston, Texas, and Powell Law Group, LLP, Austin, Texas, Co-Bond Counsel, and Locke Lord LLP, Austin, Texas, Special Tax Counsel. See “APPENDIX C – FORM OF CO-BOND COUNSEL’S OPINION” and “APPENDIX D – FORM OF SPECIAL TAX COUNSEL’S OPINION” hereto. Certain matters will be passed upon for the Underwriter by its counsel, Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas. It is expected that the Bonds will be available for delivery through DTC on or about September 21, 2021 (the “Date of Delivery”).*

**STEPHENS INC.**

**STATED MATURITIES, PRINCIPAL AMOUNTS, INTEREST RATES, INITIAL YIELDS, CUSIP NUMBERS, AND REDEMPTION PROVISIONS**

**\$7,675,000**

**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
(a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Throckmorton County)  
UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2021**

**CUSIP No. Prefix 885891 <sup>(1)</sup>**

**\$2,080,000 Serial Bonds**

<b>Maturity Date (8/15)</b>	<b>Principal (\$)</b>	<b>Interest Rate (%)</b>	<b>Initial Yield (%)</b>	<b>CUSIP No. <sup>(1)</sup> Suffix</b>
2022	185,000	3.00	0.19	AA9
2023	165,000	3.00	0.27	AB7
2024	170,000	3.00	0.33	AC5
2025	175,000	3.00	0.46	AD3
2026	180,000	3.00	0.63	AE1
2027	185,000	3.00	0.76	AF8
2028	190,000	3.00	0.92	AG6
2029	200,000	3.00	1.02	AH4
2030	205,000	3.00	1.11	AJ0
2031	210,000	3.00	1.18 <sup>(2)</sup>	AK7
2032	215,000	3.00	1.27 <sup>(2)</sup>	AL5

(Interest to accrue from the initial Date of Delivery)

**\$5,595,000 Term Bonds**

**\$455,000 3.00% Term Bonds due August 15, 2034, Priced to Yield 1.36% <sup>(2)</sup>, CUSIP No. Suffix AM3 <sup>(1)</sup>**

**\$480,000 3.00% Term Bonds due August 15, 2036, Priced to Yield 1.47% <sup>(2)</sup>, CUSIP No. Suffix AN1 <sup>(1)</sup>**

**\$1,330,000 3.00% Term Bonds due August 15, 2041, Priced to Yield 1.69% <sup>(2)</sup>, CUSIP No. Suffix AP6 <sup>(1)</sup>**

**\$1,545,000 3.00% Term Bonds due August 15, 2046, Priced to Yield 1.86% <sup>(2)</sup>, CUSIP No. Suffix AQ4 <sup>(1)</sup>**

**\$1,785,000 3.00% Term Bonds due August 15, 2051, Priced to Yield 2.00% <sup>(2)</sup>, CUSIP No. Suffix AR2 <sup>(1)</sup>**

(Interest to accrue from the initial Date of Delivery)

The District reserves the option to redeem the Bonds maturing on and after August 15, 2031, in whole or in part, before their respective scheduled maturity dates, in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on August 15, 2030, or on any date thereafter, at a redemption price equal to the principal amount thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. In addition, the Bonds maturing on August 15 in the years 2034, 2036, 2041, 2046, and 2051 (the "Term Bonds") are also subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption prior to stated maturity. See "THE BONDS – Redemption Provisions of the Bonds" herein.

<sup>(1)</sup> CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of the owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the Underwriter, the District, or the Municipal Advisor is responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

<sup>(2)</sup> Yield shown to first optional redemption date of August 15, 2030.

**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**210 College Street**  
**Throckmorton, Texas 76483**

**BOARD OF TRUSTEES**

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Term Expiration</u>	<u>Occupation</u>
Kathy Thorp	President	May 2024	Retired
Gus Dormier	Vice President	May 2023	Retired/Home Health
Sandra Redwine	Secretary	May 2022	Retired
Terry Don Barrington	Trustee	May 2022	Retired
Whitney Waller	Trustee	May 2024	Nurse
Kena Whitfield	Trustee	May 2024	County Clerk Deputy
Terry Lowery	Trustee	May 2024	Retired

**ADMINISTRATION – FINANCE RELATED**

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>
Dr. Michelle Cline	Superintendent of Schools
Ms. Britnee Woods	Business Manager

**CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS**

Auditors	Cameron L. Gulley, Eastland, Texas
Co-Bond Counsel	Haynes and Boone, LLP, Houston, Texas Powell Law Group, LLP, Austin, Texas
Special Tax Counsel	Locke Lord LLP, Austin, Texas
Municipal Advisor	Live Oak Public Finance, LLC, Austin, Texas

For Additional Information Contact:

Dr. Michelle Cline  
Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District  
210 College Street  
Throckmorton, Texas 76483  
(940) 849-2411  
[cline@throck.org](mailto:cline@throck.org)

Mr. Christian Merritt  
Live Oak Public Finance, LLC  
1515 S. Capital of Texas Hwy., Suite 206  
Austin, Texas 78746  
(512) 726-5547  
[cmerritt@liveoakpf.com](mailto:cmerritt@liveoakpf.com)

Mr. John Blackburn  
Live Oak Public Finance, LLC  
1515 S. Capital of Texas Hwy., Suite 206  
Austin, Texas 78746  
(512) 726-5547  
[jblackburn@liveoakpf.com](mailto:jblackburn@liveoakpf.com)

## USE OF INFORMATION IN THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

No dealer, broker, salesman, or other person has been authorized by the District to give any information or to make any representation with respect to the Bonds, other than as contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by either of the foregoing.

This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of the Bonds by any person, in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such offer, solicitation, or sale. The information set forth herein has been obtained from sources which are believed to be reliable but is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as a representation by the Underwriter.

The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall under any circumstances create any implication that there has been no change in the information or opinions set forth herein after the date of this Official Statement. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking" and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE" herein for a description of the undertakings of the Texas Education Agency ("TEA") and the District, respectively, to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

The Underwriter has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriter has reviewed the information in this Official Statement pursuant to its responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws, but the Underwriter does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

The Municipal Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Municipal Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the District and to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Municipal Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THESE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION FOR THE PURCHASE THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE UNDERWRITER MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THIS ISSUE AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

None of the District, the Municipal Advisor, or the Underwriter make any representation or warranty with respect to the information contained in this Official Statement regarding The Depository Trust Company ("DTC") or its Book-Entry-Only System described under the caption "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein or the affairs of TEA described under the caption "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, as such information has been provided by DTC and TEA, respectively.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement, nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds, is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THE ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION WITH RESPECT TO THE BONDS.

NEITHER THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION NOR ANY STATE SECURITIES COMMISSION HAS APPROVED OR DISAPPROVED OF THE BONDS OR PASSED UPON THE ADEQUACY OR ACCURACY OF THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT. ANY REPRESENTATION TO THE CONTRARY IS A CRIMINAL OFFENSE.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

USE OF INFORMATION IN THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT .....	iv	State Mandated Homestead Exemptions .....	30
TABLE OF CONTENTS .....	v	Local Option Homestead Exemptions .....	30
OFFICIAL STATEMENT SUMMARY .....	vi	State Mandated Freeze on School District Taxes .....	31
INTRODUCTION .....	1	Personal Property .....	31
INFECTIOUS DISEASE OUTBREAK – COVID-19 .....	1	Freeport and Goods-In-Transit Exemptions .....	31
PLAN OF FINANCING .....	3	Other Exempt Property .....	31
Purpose .....	3	Temporary Exemption for Qualified Property Damaged by a	
Sources and Uses of Funds .....	3	Disaster .....	31
THE BONDS .....	3	Tax Increment Reinvestment Zones .....	32
Description of the Bonds .....	3	Tax Limitation Agreements .....	32
Authority for Issuance .....	3	District and Taxpayer Remedies .....	32
Use of Proceeds .....	3	Levy and Collection of Taxes .....	32
Security and Source of Payment .....	4	District’s Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies .....	33
Permanent School Fund Guarantee .....	4	THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE	
Redemption Provisions of the Bonds .....	4	DISTRICT .....	33
Notice of Redemption .....	5	STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS	
Defeasance .....	6	IN TEXAS .....	34
Amendments to Bond Order .....	6	Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance	
Default and Remedies .....	6	System .....	34
Payment Record .....	7	CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM .....	35
Legality .....	7	Overview .....	35
Delivery .....	7	2021 Regular and Special Legislative Sessions .....	35
Future Issues .....	7	Local Funding for School Districts .....	36
REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE .....	7	State Funding for School Districts .....	36
Paying Agent/Registrar .....	7	Local Revenue Level in Excess of Entitlement .....	39
Record Date for Interest Payment .....	8	THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE	
Registration, Transferability and Exchange .....	8	DISTRICT .....	39
Limitation on Transfer of Bonds .....	8	TAX RATE LIMITATIONS .....	40
BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM .....	8	M&O Tax Rate Limitations .....	40
Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of This Official		I&S Tax Rate Limitations .....	40
Statement .....	10	Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate .....	40
Effect of Termination of Book-Entry-Only System .....	10	DEBT LIMITATIONS .....	41
THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE		EMPLOYEE BENEFITS, RETIREMENT PLAN AND OTHER	
PROGRAM .....	10	POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS .....	42
History and Purpose .....	10	INVESTMENT POLICIES .....	42
Management and Administration of the Fund .....	11	Legal Investments .....	42
The Total Return Constitutional Amendment .....	13	LEGAL MATTERS .....	44
2021 Legislation - Senate Bill 1232 .....	14	Litigation .....	45
Asset Allocation of Fund Portfolios .....	15	TAX MATTERS .....	45
PSF Strategic Asset Allocations .....	16	Tax Exemption .....	45
Comparative Investment Schedule - PSF(SLB) .....	18	Tax Changes .....	46
The School District Bond Guarantee Program .....	18	Ancillary Tax Consequences .....	46
The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program .....	19	Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount Bonds .....	46
Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program .....	21	Tax Accounting Treatment of Premium Bonds .....	47
2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond		Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations .....	47
Guarantee Program .....	22	LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE	
Charter District Risk Factors .....	23	PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS .....	47
Infectious Disease Outbreak .....	23	CONTINUING DISCLOSURE .....	47
Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program .....	24	Annual Reports .....	48
Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds .....	24	Notice of Certain Events .....	48
Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended		Limitations and Amendments .....	49
August 31, 2020 .....	25	Compliance with Prior Agreements .....	49
Other Events and Disclosures .....	27	OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION .....	49
PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking .....	27	Authenticity of Financial Information .....	49
Annual Reports .....	28	Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale .....	49
Event Notices .....	28	Municipal Bond Rating .....	50
Availability of Information .....	29	Municipal Advisor .....	50
Limitations and Agreements .....	29	Underwriting .....	50
Compliance with Prior Undertakings .....	29	Forward-Looking Statements .....	51
SEC Exemptive Relief .....	29	Information from External Sources .....	51
AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES .....	30	Authorization of the Official Statement .....	51
Valuation of Taxable Property .....	30		
APPENDIX A – SELECTED FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT .....	A-1		
APPENDIX B – AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS .....	B-1		
APPENDIX C – FORM OF CO-BOND COUNSEL’S OPINION .....	C-1		
APPENDIX D – FORM OF SPECIAL TAX COUNSEL’S OPINION .....	D-1		

The cover page hereof, the appendices hereto, and any addenda, supplement, or amendment hereto are part of this Official Statement.

## OFFICIAL STATEMENT SUMMARY

This summary is subject in all respects to the more complete information and definitions contained or incorporated in this Official Statement. The offering of the Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of this entire Official Statement. No person is authorized to detach this summary from this Official Statement or to otherwise use it without this entire Official Statement.

<b>THE DISTRICT .....</b>	The District is a political subdivision located in Throckmorton County, Texas. The District is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools, who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors. See "INTRODUCTION – Description of the District" herein.
<b>AUTHORITY FOR ISSUANCE</b>	The Bonds are issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1) of the Texas Education Code, as amended, the Election, and the Bond Order adopted by the Board on August 25, 2021. The Bonds are direct and voted obligations of the District, payable from an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limitation as to rate or amount, on all taxable property located within the District. See "THE BONDS - Authority for Issuance" herein.
<b>THE BONDS .....</b>	The Bonds shall mature on the dates and in the amounts set forth on the inside cover page of this Official Statement. See "THE BONDS– Description of the Bonds" herein.
<b>DATED DATE .....</b>	September 15, 2021.
<b>PAYMENT OF INTEREST ...</b>	Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the date of delivery and will be payable until stated maturity or prior redemption on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing February 15, 2022. See "THE BONDS – Description of the Bonds" herein.
<b>OPTIONAL REDEMPTION ..</b>	The District reserves the option to redeem the Bonds maturing on and after August 15, 2031, in whole or in part before their respective scheduled maturity dates, in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on August 15, 2030, or on any date thereafter, at a redemption price equal to the principal amount thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. In addition, the Bonds maturing on August 15 in the years 2034, 2036, 2041, 2046, and 2051 (the "Term Bonds") are also subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption prior to stated maturity. See "THE BONDS – Redemption Provisions of the Bonds" herein.
<b>SECURITY FOR THE BONDS</b>	The Bonds constitute direct obligations of the District payable from a continuing direct annual ad valorem tax levied against all taxable property located therein, without legal limitation as to rate or amount.
<b>TAX MATTERS .....</b>	In the opinion of Locke Lord LLP, Austin, Texas, Special Tax Counsel, under existing law, interest on the Bonds is excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes. See "TAX MATTERS" and "APPENDIX D – FORM OF SPECIAL TAX COUNSEL'S OPINION" herein.
<b>QUALIFIED TAX-EXEMPT OBLIGATIONS .....</b>	The District has designated the Bonds as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions.
<b>PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE .....</b>	The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program, which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of the State of Texas approves the Bonds. See "THE BONDS" – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein.
<b>PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR</b>	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is UMB Bank, N.A., Dallas, Texas.
<b>MUNICIPAL BOND RATING ..</b>	The currently-outstanding unlimited tax-supported debt of the District including the Bonds is rated "A" by S&P Global Ratings, Inc. ("S&P") without regard to credit enhancement, and "AAA" by S&P by virtue of the guarantee of the Permanent School Fund of the State. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein.
<b>USE OF PROCEEDS .....</b>	Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used: (i) for the construction, improvement, renovation, and equipment of school buildings in the District; (ii) to make a deposit into the capitalized interest fund; and (iii) to pay for the costs of issuance of the Bonds. See "PLAN OF FINANCING – Sources and Uses of Funds" herein.
<b>BOOK-ENTRY ONLY SYSTEM .....</b>	The definitive Bonds will be initially registered and delivered only to Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein. Beneficial ownership of the Bonds may be acquired in denominations of \$5,000 of the principal amount or any integral multiple thereof. No physical delivery of the Bonds will be made to the beneficial owners thereof. Principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar to Cede & Co., which will make distribution of the amounts so paid to the participating members of DTC for subsequent payment to the beneficial owners of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.
<b>PAYMENT RECORD .....</b>	The Bonds are the District's first issue of bonded indebtedness.
<b>DELIVERY .....</b>	When issued; anticipated to occur on or about September 21, 2021.
<b>LEGALITY .....</b>	The Bonds are subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Haynes and Boone, LLP, Houston, Texas, and Powell Law Group, LLP, Austin, Texas, Co-Bond Counsel. See "APPENDIX C – FORM OF CO-BOND COUNSEL'S OPINION" hereto.

## OFFICIAL STATEMENT

Relating to

\$7,675,000

### **THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT (a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Throckmorton County) UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2021**

#### INTRODUCTION

This Official Statement, which includes APPENDICES A, B, C, and D attached hereto and incorporated herein, provides certain information regarding the issuance of the \$7,675,000 Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District (the "District") Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021 (the "Bonds"). The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and the general laws of the State of Texas (the "State" or "Texas"), particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1) of the Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on May 1, 2021 (the "Election"), and that certain bond order (the "Bond Order") adopted by the District's Board of Trustees (the "Board") on August 25, 2021. The Bonds are direct and voted obligations of the District, payable from an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limitation as to rate or amount, on all taxable property located within the District. See "THE BONDS – Authority for Issuance" herein.

All financial and other information presented in this Official Statement has been provided by the District from its records, except for information expressly attributed to other sources. The presentation of information, including tables of receipts from taxes and other sources, is intended to show recent historic information and is not intended to indicate future or continuing trends in the financial position or other affairs of the District. No representation is made that past experience, as is shown by that financial and other information, will necessarily continue or be repeated in the future. See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION – Forward-Looking Statements" herein.

Included in this Official Statement are descriptions of the Bonds, the Bond Order, and certain other information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained by writing the Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District, 210 College Street, Throckmorton, Texas 76483, Attention: Superintendent of Schools and, during the offering period, from the District's Municipal Advisor, Live Oak Public Finance, LLC, 1515 S. Capital of Texas Hwy., Suite 206, Austin, Texas 78746, upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as to its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. Copies of the Official Statement will be deposited with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, 1900 Duke Street, Suite 600, Alexandria, Virginia 22314 and will be available through its Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") System. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE" herein for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

#### **Description of the District**

The District is a political subdivision of the State located in Throckmorton County. The District is located 68 miles northeast of the City of Abilene. The District is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools, who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.

#### **INFECTIOUS DISEASE OUTBREAK – COVID-19**

The outbreak of COVID-19, a respiratory disease caused by a new strain of coronavirus, has been characterized as a pandemic (the "Pandemic") by the World Health Organization and is currently affecting many parts of the world, including the United States and Texas. On January 31, 2020, the Secretary of the United States Health and Human Services Department declared a public health emergency for the United States and on March 13, 2020, the President of the United States declared the outbreak of COVID-19 in the United States a national emergency. Subsequently, the President's Coronavirus Guidelines for America and the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention called upon Americans to take actions to slow the spread of COVID-19 in the United States.

On March 13, 2020, the Governor of Texas (the "Governor") declared a state of disaster for all counties in Texas in response to the Pandemic, which disaster declaration he has subsequently extended. Pursuant to Chapter 418 of the Texas Government Code, the Governor has broad authority to respond to disasters, including suspending any

regulatory statute prescribing the procedures for conducting state business or any order or rule of a state agency (including TEA (defined herein)) that would in any way prevent, hinder, or delay necessary action in coping with the disaster, and issuing executive orders that have the force and effect of law. The Governor has since issued a number of executive orders relating to COVID-19 preparedness, mitigation, and phased reopening of the State. On July 29, 2021, the Governor issued Executive Order GA-38, which supersedes all pre-existing executive orders related to COVID-19 and rescinds them in their entirety, except for Executive Orders GA-13 (related to detention in county and municipal jails) and GA-37 (related to migrant transport). Executive Order GA-38 combines several previous executive orders into one order and continues the prohibition against governmental entities in Texas, including counties, cities, school districts, public health authorities, and government officials from requiring or mandating any person to wear a face covering and subjects a governmental entity or official to a fine of up to \$1,000 for noncompliance. It also prohibits governmental entities from (i) compelling any individual to receive a COVID-19 vaccine administered under emergency use authorization and (ii) enforcing any requirement to show proof of vaccination before receiving a service or entering any place if the public or private entity other than nursing homes, hospitals and similar facilities) that has adopted such requirement receives public funds through any means. Executive Order GA-38 remains in effect until amended, rescinded, or superseded by the Governor. Additional information regarding executive orders issued by the Governor is accessible on the website of the Governor at <http://gov.texas.gov/>. Neither the information on, nor accessed through, such website of the Governor is incorporated by reference, either expressly or by implication, into this Official Statement.

On June 3, 2021, TEA issued updated public planning health guidance in accordance with Executive Order GA-36 (which became effective June 5, 2021), to address on campus instruction, administrative activities by teachers, staff or students that occur on school campuses, non-UIL extracurricular sports, and activities, and any other activities that teachers, staff, or students must complete. Within the guidance, TEA instructs schools that, per Executive Order GA-36, school systems cannot require students or staff to wear a mask; however, the school systems must allow individuals to wear a mask if they choose to do so. Within the guidance, TEA instructs schools to notify its local health department, in accordance with applicable federal, state, and local laws and regulations, including any applicable confidentiality requirements, of individuals who have been in a school and test-confirmed to have COVID-19. Additionally, upon receipt of information that any teacher, staff member, student, or visitor at a school is test-confirmed to have COVID-19, the school must submit a report to the Texas Department of State Health Services via its online portal.

The TEA advised districts that for the 2020-2021 school year district funding will return to being based on "Average Daily Attendance" (being generally calculated as the sum of student attendance for each State-mandated days of instruction, defined herein as "ADA") calculations requiring attendance to be taken. However, the TEA has crafted an approach for determining ADA during the pandemic that provides districts with several options for determining daily attendance. These include, remote synchronous instruction, remote asynchronous instruction, on campus instruction, and the Texas Virtual Schools Network.

The full extent of the ongoing impact of COVID-19 on the District's longer-term operational and financial performance will depend on future developments, many of which are outside of its control, including the effectiveness of the mitigation strategies discussed above, the duration and spread of COVID-19, and future governmental actions, all of which are highly uncertain and cannot be predicted. The District continues to monitor the spread of COVID-19 and is working with local, state, and national agencies to address the potential impact of the Pandemic upon the District. While the potential impact of the Pandemic on the District cannot be quantified at this time, the continued outbreak of COVID-19 could have an adverse effect on the District's operations and financial condition.

The Pandemic has negatively affected travel, commerce, and financial markets globally, and is widely expected to continue negatively affecting economic growth and financial markets worldwide. These negative impacts may reduce or negatively affect property values within the District. The financial and operating data contained herein are the latest available but are for the dates and the periods stated herein, which are for periods prior to the economic impact of the Pandemic and efforts to slow it. It is unclear at this time what effect, if any, COVID-19 and resulting economic disruption may have on future assessed values or the collection of taxes, either because of delinquencies or collection and valuation relief resulting from the declared emergency. The Bonds are secured by an unlimited ad valorem tax, and a reduction in property values may require an increase in the ad valorem tax rate required to pay the Bonds as well as the District's share of operations and maintenance expenses payable from ad valorem taxes.

Additionally, State funding of District operations and maintenance in future fiscal years could be adversely impacted by the negative effects on economic growth and financial markets resulting from the Pandemic as well as ongoing disruptions in the global oil markets. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" herein.

For a discussion of the impact of the Pandemic on the PSF (defined herein), see "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM - Infectious Disease Outbreak" herein.



## PLAN OF FINANCING

### Purpose

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used: (i) for the construction, improvement, renovation, and equipment of school buildings in the District; (ii) to make a deposit into the capitalized interest fund; and (iii) to pay for the costs of issuance of the Bonds. See “PLAN OF FINANCING – Sources and Uses of Funds” herein.

### Sources and Uses of Funds

The proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be applied approximately as follows:

<u>Sources of Funds:</u>	
Par Amount of Bonds	\$7,675,000.00
Reoffering Premium on the Bonds	795,797.45
TOTAL SOURCES	<u>\$8,470,797.45</u>
 <u>Uses of Funds:</u>	
Deposit to Construction Fund	\$8,245,000.00
Deposit to Capitalized Interest Fund	50,000.00
Costs of Issuance & Rounding Amount	120,751.22
Underwriter’s Discount	55,046.23
TOTAL USES	<u>\$8,470,797.45</u>

## THE BONDS

### Description of the Bonds

The Bonds will be dated September 15, 2021 (the “Dated Date”) and mature on August 15 in each of the years and in the amounts shown on the inside cover page. Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the date of initial delivery (the “Delivery Date”), will be payable on February 15, 2022 and each February 15 and August 15 thereafter until maturity or prior redemption and will be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months. The Bonds will be issued only in fully-registered form in denominations of \$5,000 of the principal amount or any integral multiple thereof within a stated maturity.

Interest on the Bonds is payable to the registered owners appearing on the bond registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar relating to the Bonds (the “Bond Register”) on the Record Date (detailed below) and such interest shall be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar: (i) by check sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of the registered owner recorded in the Bond Register; or (ii) by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. The principal of the Bonds is payable at stated maturity or prior redemption upon presentation and surrender to the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Bonds will be issued only in fully-registered form in any integral multiple of \$5,000 of the principal amount for any one maturity.

The definitive Bonds will initially be registered and delivered only to Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”), pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein. Beneficial ownership of the Bonds may be acquired in denominations of \$5,000 of the principal amount or any integral multiple thereof. No physical delivery of the Bonds will be made to the owners thereof. Debt service on the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar to Cede & Co., which will make distribution of the amounts so paid to the participating members of DTC for subsequent payment to the Beneficial Owners (defined above) of the Bonds. See “BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM” herein.

### Authority for Issuance

The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Government Code, as amended, the Election, and the Bond Order.

### Use of Proceeds

Following the issuance of the Bonds, the District will have \$21,755,000 in voted but unissued bonds as further described below. See “TABLE 9 – AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED BONDS” in APPENDIX A hereto.

A summary of the Bonds authorized at said Election is as follows:

<u>Purpose</u>	<u>Amount Authorized</u>	<u>Amount Previously Issued</u>	<u>Amount This Issue</u>	<u>Amount Remaining</u>
Construction, improvement, renovation, and equipment of school buildings in the District, to make a deposit into the capitalized interest fund, and to pay for the costs of issuance of the Bonds.	\$30,000,000	\$0	\$8,245,000*	\$21,755,000

\* Includes premium on the Bonds deposited into the Construction Fund.

### **Security and Source of Payment**

The Bonds constitute direct obligations of the District payable from a continuing direct annual ad valorem tax levied against all taxable property located within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" herein, and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" herein. Additionally, the payment of the Bonds is expected to be guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas.

### **Permanent School Fund Guarantee**

The District has received conditional approval from the Commissioner of Education for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program pursuant to Chapter 45, Subchapter C of the Texas Education Code, as amended. Subject to certain conditions discussed under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, the payment of the Bonds will be guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State. In the event of payment default, Beneficial Owners will receive all payments due on the Bonds from the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas.

### **Redemption Provisions of the Bonds**

#### Optional Redemption

The District reserves the right to redeem the Bonds maturing on and after August 15, 2031, in whole or in part, in denominations of \$5,000 of the principal amount or any integral multiple thereof, on August 15, 2030 or any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. When the Bonds or portions thereof have been called for redemption and due provisions have been made to redeem the Bonds, the amounts so redeemed shall be payable solely from the funds provided for redemption, and interest which would otherwise accrue on the Bonds or portions thereof called for redemption shall terminate on the date fixed for redemption.

#### Mandatory Redemption

The Bonds maturing on August 15 in the years 2034, 2036, 2041, 2046, and 2051 (the "Term Bonds") are also subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption prior to stated maturity from moneys required to be deposited into the Bond Fund for such purpose and shall be redeemed in part, by lot or other customary method, at the principal amount thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption in the following principal amounts on August 15 in each of the years as set forth below:

<b>\$455,000 Term Bond Due August 15, 2034</b>		<b>\$480,000 Term Bond Due August 15, 2036</b>		<b>\$1,330,000 Term Bond Due August 15, 2041</b>	
<u>Date (maturity)</u>	<u>Principal Amount (\$)</u>	<u>Date (maturity)</u>	<u>Principal Amount (\$)</u>	<u>Date (maturity)</u>	<u>Principal Amount (\$)</u>
2033	225,000	2035	235,000	2037	250,000
2034*	230,000	2036*	245,000	2038	260,000
				2039	265,000
				2040	275,000
				2041*	280,000

\*Stated Maturity.

**\$1,545,000 Term Bond  
Due August 15, 2046**

<u>Date (maturity)</u>	<u>Principal Amount (\$)</u>
2042	290,000
2043	300,000
2044	310,000
2045	320,000
2046*	325,000

**\$1,785,000 Term Bond  
Due August 15, 2051**

<u>Date (maturity)</u>	<u>Principal Amount (\$)</u>
2047	335,000
2048	345,000
2049	355,000
2050	370,000
2051*	380,000

\*Stated Maturity.

The particular Term Bonds to be redeemed on each redemption date shall be chosen by lot by the Paying Agent/Registrar; provided, however, that the principal amount of Term Bonds for a Stated Maturity required to be redeemed on a mandatory redemption date may be reduced, at the option of the District, by the principal amount of Term Bonds of like maturity which, at least fifty (50) days prior to a mandatory redemption date, (1) shall have been acquired by the District at a price not exceeding the principal amount of such Term Bonds plus accrued interest to the date of purchase thereof, and delivered to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation or (2) shall have been redeemed pursuant to the optional redemption provisions appearing below and not theretofore credited against a mandatory redemption requirement.

**Selection of Bonds for Redemption**

If fewer than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the District may select the maturities of Bonds to be redeemed. If fewer than all the Bonds of any maturity are to be redeemed, the Paying Agent/Registrar (or DTC while the Bonds are in Book-Entry-Only form) shall determine by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, within such maturity to be redeemed. If a Bond (or any portion of the principal sum thereof) shall have been called for redemption and notice of such redemption shall have been given, such Bond (or the principal amount thereof to be redeemed) shall become due and payable on such redemption date and interest thereon shall cease to accrue from and after the redemption date, provided funds for the payment of the redemption price and accrued interest thereon are held by the Paying Agent/Registrar on the redemption date.

**Notice of Redemption**

No fewer than thirty (30) days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the holder appearing on the Bond Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice. ANY NOTICE OF REDEMPTION SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER ONE OR MORE BONDHOLDERS FAILED TO RECEIVE SUCH NOTICE. NOTICE HAVING BEEN SO GIVEN, THE BONDS CALLED FOR REDEMPTION SHALL BECOME DUE AND PAYABLE ON THE SPECIFIED REDEMPTION DATE, AND NOTWITHSTANDING THAT ANY BOND OR PORTION THEREOF HAS NOT BEEN SURRENDERED FOR PAYMENT, INTEREST ON SUCH BOND OR PORTION THEREOF SHALL CEASE TO ACCRUE.

**DTC Redemption Provisions**

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as the Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Bond Order, or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the Beneficial Owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, a redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement a redemption of such Bonds from the Beneficial Owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be so redeemed will not be governed by the Bond Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants, or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or Beneficial Owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

## **Defeasance**

Any Bond(s) will be deemed paid and shall no longer be considered to be outstanding within the meaning of the Bond Order when payment of the principal of and interest on such Bond(s) to its stated maturity or redemption date will have been made or will have been provided by depositing with an authorized escrow agent: (1) moneys in an amount sufficient to make such payment; (2) Government Obligations (defined below) certified, in the case of a net defeasance, by an independent public accounting firm of national reputation, the District's Municipal Advisor, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or another qualified third party certifying such maturities and interest payment dates and bear such interest as will, without further investment or reinvestment of either the principal amount thereof or the interest earnings therefrom, be sufficient to make such payment; or (3) a combination of moneys and Government Obligations together so certified sufficient to make such payment.

The Bond Order provides that "Government Obligations" means: (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America; (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the governing body of the District authorizes the defeasance, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent; (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that on the date the governing body of the District adopts or approves the proceedings authorizing the financial arrangements have been refunded and that are, on the date of the governing body of the District authorizes the defeasance, rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent; or (d) any additional securities and obligations hereafter authorized by Texas law as eligible for use to accomplish the discharge of obligations such as the Bonds. Authorized District officials may limit these eligible securities as deemed necessary, in connection with the sale of the Bonds. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities acquired to defease any Bonds, or those for any other Government Obligations, will be maintained at any particular rating category. Further, there is no assurance that current Texas law will not be amended in a manner that expands or contracts the list of permissible defeasance securities (such list consisting of those securities identified in clauses (a) through (c) above), or any rating requirement thereon, that may be purchased with defeasance proceeds relating to the Bonds ("Defeasance Proceeds"), though the District has reserved the right to utilize any additional securities for such purpose in the event the aforementioned list is expanded. Because the Bond Order does not contractually limit such permissible defeasance securities and expressly recognizes the ability of the District to use lawfully available Defeasance Proceeds to defease all or any portion of the Bonds, registered owners of the Bonds are deemed to have consented to the use of Defeasance Proceeds to purchase such other defeasance securities, notwithstanding the fact that such defeasance securities may not be of the same investment quality as those currently identified under Texas law as permissible defeasance securities.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the District to initiate proceedings to call the Bonds for redemption or take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished; provided, however, the District has the option, to be exercised at the time of the defeasance of the Bonds, to call for redemption at an earlier date those Bonds which have been defeased to their maturity date, if the District (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call such Bonds for redemption, (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of such Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements, and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

Defeasance will automatically cancel the Permanent School Fund Guarantee with respect to those defeased Bonds.

## **Amendments to Bond Order**

The District may amend the Bond Order without the consent of any beneficial owner in any manner not detrimental to the interests of the beneficial owners, including the curing of any ambiguity, inconsistency, or formal defect or omission therein. In addition, the District may, with the written consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Bonds then outstanding, amend, add to, or rescind any of the provisions of the Bond Order; except that, without the consent of all of the beneficial owners of the Bonds then outstanding, no such amendment, addition, or rescission shall: (i) extend the time or times of payment of the principal of and interest on the Bonds, reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest thereof or in any other way modify the terms of payment of the principal or interest on the Bonds; (ii) give any preference to any Bond over any other Bond; or (iii) reduce the percentage of the aggregate principal amount of Bonds required to be held for beneficial owners for consent to any amendment, addition, or waiver, or rescission.

## **Default and Remedies**

If the District defaults in the payment of principal, interest, or redemption price on the Bonds when due, or if it fails to make payments into any fund or funds created in the Bond Order, or defaults in the observation or performance of any

other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Bond Order, the registered owners may seek a writ of mandamus to compel District officials to carry out their legally imposed duties with respect to the Bonds, if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Bonds or the Bond Order and the District's obligations are not uncertain or disputed. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles and rests with the discretion of the court but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of maturity of the Bonds in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Bond Order does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the registered owners upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Bond Order, or upon any other condition and, accordingly, all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. The Texas Supreme Court ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006) that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language. Even if a judgment against the District could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the District's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the District or sell property within the District to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. Furthermore, the District is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the United States Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due.) The opinion of Co-Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Bond Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors and general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion.

#### **Payment Record**

The Bonds are the District's first issue of bonded indebtedness.

#### **Legality**

The Bonds are offered when, as, and if issued, and subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas, and the opinion of the District's Co-Bond Counsel, Haynes and Boone, LLP, Houston, Texas, and Powell Law Group, LLP, Austin, Texas.

#### **Delivery**

When issued; anticipated to occur on or about September 21, 2021.

#### **Future Issues**

After issuance of the Bonds, the District will have \$21,755,000 authorized but unissued ad valorem tax bonds. The District's voters could authorize the issuance of additional new money bonds at a future election. In addition, the District may incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance taxes, public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.

### **REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE**

#### **Paying Agent/Registrar**

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is UMB Bank, N.A., Dallas, Texas. The Bond Order provides for the District's right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. The District covenants to maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar at all times until the Bonds are duly paid and any successor Paying Agent/Registrar shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the State or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve as and perform the duties and services of Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any changes in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District agrees to promptly cause a written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, which notice shall also give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

## **Record Date for Interest Payment**

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the registered owner entitled to receive a payment of interest on any Bond is the close of business on the last business day of the month next preceding each interest payment date.

In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for thirty (30) days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (which shall be fifteen (15) days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five (5) business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the Bond Register at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

## **Registration, Transferability and Exchange**

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System shall be discontinued, printed certificates will be issued to the registered owners of the Bonds and thereafter the Bonds may be transferred, registered, and assigned on the Bond Register only upon presentation and surrender of such printed certificates to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bond or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond(s) will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bond(s) being transferred or exchanged at the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. A new Bond(s) issued in an exchange or transfer of a Bond(s) will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bond(s) to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. Any new Bond(s) registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like kind and aggregate principal amount and having the same maturity or maturities as the Bond(s) surrendered for exchange or transfer. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein for a description of the system to be utilized initially in regard to ownership and transferability of the Bond(s).

## **Limitation on Transfer of Bonds**

Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar are required (i) to make any transfer or exchange during a period beginning at the opening of business forty-five (45) days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (ii) to transfer or exchange any Bonds so selected for redemption when such redemption is scheduled to occur within forty-five (45) calendar days; provided however, that such limitation of transfer is not applicable to an exchange by the registered owner of the uncalled balance of a Bond.

## **BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM**

*The following describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC (defined below) while the Bonds are registered in its nominee's name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Municipal Advisor, and the Underwriter believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.*

*The District cannot and does not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or redemption or other notices, to DTC Participants, (2) DTC Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds), or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC Participants are on file with DTC.*

The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York, will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered security certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments from over 100 countries that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation, and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a S&P Global Ratings rating of "AA+." The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the book-entry-only system for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If fewer than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's MMI Procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

Payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on the payment date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC [nor its nominee], the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Payments to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Disbursement of such

payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, physical bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

### **Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of This Official Statement**

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Bond Order will be given only to DTC.

### **Effect of Termination of Book-Entry-Only System**

In the event that the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued by DTC or the use of the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued by the District, printed physical Bond certificates will be issued to the respective holders and the Bonds will be subject to transfer, exchange and registration provisions as set forth in the Bond Order and summarized under the caption "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE" above.

## **THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM**

*The information below concerning the Permanent School Fund and the Guarantee Program for School District Bonds has been provided by the Texas Education Agency and is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness by, nor is it to be construed as a representation of, the District, the Municipal Advisor or the Underwriter.*

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and is governed by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

### **History and Purpose**

The PSF supports the State's public school system in two major ways: distributions to the constitutionally established Available School Fund (the "ASF"), as described below, and the guarantee of school district and charter district issued bonds through the Guarantee Program. The PSF was created with a \$2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas, with the sole purpose of assisting in the funding of public education for present and future generations. The Constitution of 1876 described that the PSF would be "permanent," and stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, only the income produced by the PSF could be used to complement taxes in financing public education, which primarily consisted of income from securities, capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF.



On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Education Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Education Commissioner. On approval by the Education Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Guarantee Program are fully guaranteed by the PSF. The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General (the "Attorney General") been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

Audited financial information for the SBOE (as defined herein) financial portfolios of the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The State School Land Board's ("SLB") land and real assets investment operations, which are part of the PSF as described below, are included in the annual financial report of the Texas General Land Office (the "GLO") that is included in the comprehensive annual report of the State of Texas. The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2020, filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2020 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when and as it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2020 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2020, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2020 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2020 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts (i) each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, (ii) the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, (iii) the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund, which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), and (iv) monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/) and with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org). Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at [www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml](http://www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml). A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. See "2021 Legislation – SB 1232" for proposed changes in the management of the Fund that may result in changes to the annual audit prepared with respect to the Fund.

### **Management and Administration of the Fund**

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the State Board of Education (the "SBOE") the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. The SBOE consists of 15 members who are elected by territorial districts in the State to four year terms of office. See "2021 Legislation – SB 1232" for proposed changes affecting the management of the Fund.

The Texas Constitution provides that the Fund shall be managed through the exercise of the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital (the "Prudent Person

Standard”). The SBOE has adopted a “Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund,” which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual endowment, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described below, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual pay-out from the Fund to both (i) 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium, and (ii) the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period.

By law, the Education Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Education Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is hired by and reports to the Education Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund’s Executive Administrator and the PSF staff at TEA implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA’s General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments. See “2021 Legislation – SB 1232” for proposed changes in the management of the Fund.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment shifted administrative costs of the Fund from the ASF to the PSF, providing that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid “by appropriation” from the PSF. In January 2005, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att’y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), stating that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

The SBOE/PSF investment staff and the SBOE’s investment consultant for the Fund are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund’s asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants. See “2021 Legislation – SB 1232” for a discussion of proposed changes to the management of the Fund.

The SBOE contracts with a financial institution for custodial and securities lending services in addition to the performance measurement of the total return of the Fund’s financial assets managed by the SBOE. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund. See “2021 Legislation – SB 1232” for proposed changes in the management of the Fund that may result in changes to the employment and compensation options available to the management of the Fund.

The Act requires that the Education Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual status report on the Guarantee Program (which is included in the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other financial statements of the State. See “2021 Legislation – SB 1232” for proposed changes in the management of the Fund that may result in changes to the annual audit prepared with respect to the Fund.

Texas law assigns to the SLB the ability to control of the Fund’s land and mineral rights and make investments in real assets. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the elected commissioner of the GLO (the “Land Commissioner”). See “2021 Legislation – SB 1232” for proposed changes in the management of Fund assets by the SLB. The SLB manages the proceeds of the land and mineral rights that are administrated by the GLO on behalf of the Fund. The SLB is governed by a five member board, the membership of which consists of the Land Commissioner, who sits as the chairman of the board, and four citizen members appointed by the Governor. The SLB and is generally authorized to invest in the following asset classes:

- Discretionary real assets investments consisting of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds, separate accounts, and co-investment vehicles; internally managed direct real estate investments, and associated cash;
- Sovereign and other lands, being the lands set aside for the Fund when it was created, and other various lands not considered discretionary real asset investments; and,
- Mineral interests associated with Fund lands.

See “2021 Legislation – SB 1232” for changes in State law that pertain to the SLB’s future authority to manage the land and mineral rights. At August 31, 2020, the SLB managed approximately 15% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

In 2019, the Texas Legislature enacted legislation that required an annual joint meeting of the SLB and the SBOE for the purpose of discussing the allocation of the assets of the PSF and the investment of money in the PSF. The inaugural joint meeting was held in September 2020. Other legislation enacted in 2019 included a bill that created a “permanent school fund liquid account” (the “Liquid Account”) in the PSF for the purpose of receiving funds transferred from the SLB on a quarterly basis that are not then invested by the SLB or needed within the forthcoming quarter for investment by the SBOE. That legislation also provided for the SBOE to administer and invest the Liquid Account and required the TEA, in consultation with the GLO, to conduct a study regarding distributions to the ASF from the PSF. That study (the “PSF Distribution Study”), dated August 31, 2020, is available at <https://tea.texas.gov/sites/default/files/TEA-Distribution-Study.pdf>.

### **The Total Return Constitutional Amendment**

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividend income produced by Fund investments flowed into the ASF, where they were distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance, any net gains from investments of the Fund were reflected in the value of the PSF, and costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a ‘total-return-based’ formula instead of the ‘current-income-based’ formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the “Distribution Rate”), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium, in accordance with the rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the SBOE, taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the “Ten Year Total Return”). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att’y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009) (“GA-0707”), with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceed the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve “intergenerational equity.” The definition of intergenerational equity that the SBOE has generally followed is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultants, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of student enrollment State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State at which voters of the State approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The November 8, 2011 referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets was already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the

calculation of approximately \$2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under “The Total Return Constitutional Amendment” the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011, also provided authority to the GLO or another entity (described in statute as the SLB) that has responsibility for the management of revenues derived from land or other properties of the PSF to determine whether to transfer an amount each year to the ASF from the revenue derived during the current year from such land or properties. Prior to November 2019, the amount authorized to be transferred to the ASF from the GLO or SLB was limited to \$300 million per year. On November 5, 2019, a constitutional amendment was approved by State voters that increased the maximum transfer to the ASF to \$600 million each year from the revenue derived during that year from the PSF from the GLO, the SBOE or another entity to the extent such entity has the responsibility for the management of revenues derived from such land or other properties. Any amount transferred to the ASF pursuant to this constitutional provision is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers.

The following table shows amounts distributed to the ASF from the portions of the Fund administered by the SBOE (the “PSF(SBOE)”) and the SLB (the “PSF(SLB)”).

**Annual Distributions to the Available School Fund<sup>1</sup>**

<b>Fiscal Year Ending</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2013</b>	<b>2014</b>	<b>2015</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>2018</b>	<b>2019</b>	<b>2020</b>
PSF(SBOE) Distribution	\$1,093	\$1,021	\$1,021	\$839	\$839	\$1,056	\$1,056	\$1,236	\$1,236	\$1,102
PSF(SLB) Distribution	\$0	\$0	\$300	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$300	\$600 <sup>2</sup>
Per Student Distribution	\$246	\$221	\$281	\$175	\$173	\$215	\$212	\$247	\$306	\$347

<sup>1</sup> In millions of dollars. Source: PSF Annual Report for year ended August 31, 2020.

<sup>2</sup> In September 2020, the SBOE approved a special, one-time transfer of \$300 million from the portion of the PSF managed by the SBOE to the portion of the PSF managed by the SLB, which amount is to be transferred to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal year 2021. In approving the special transfer, the SBOE determined that the transfer was in the best interest of the PSF due to the historic nature of the public health and economic circumstances resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic and its impact on the school children of Texas.

In November 2020, the SBOE approved a projected \$3.4 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2022-2023. In making its determination of the 2022-2023 Distribution Rate, the SBOE took into account the announced planned distribution to the ASF by the SLB of \$875 million for the biennium.

Efforts to achieve the intergenerational equity objective, as described above, result in changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period. The following table sets forth the Distribution Rates announced by the SBOE in the fall of each even numbered year to be applicable for the following biennium.

<u>State Fiscal Biennium</u>	<u>2008-09</u>	<u>2010-11</u>	<u>2012-13</u>	<u>2014-15</u>	<u>2016-17</u>	<u>2018-19</u>	<u>2020-21</u>	<u>2022-23</u>
<u>SBOE Distribution Rate<sup>1</sup></u>	3.5%	2.5%	4.2%	3.3%	3.5%	3.7%	2.974%	4.18%

<sup>1</sup> Includes only distributions made to the ASF by the SBOE; see the immediately preceding table for amounts of direct SLB distributions to the ASF.

See “2021 Legislation – SB 1232” for a discussion of proposed changes in the management of the Fund that may impact distributions to the ASF.

**2021 Legislation - Senate Bill 1232**

During the 87th Regular Session of the Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 31, 2021 Senate Bill 1232 (“SB 1232” or “the bill”) was enacted, which relates to the management and investment of the Fund. Among other provisions of SB 1232 are provisions authorizing the creation of the Texas Permanent School Fund Corporation (the “PSF Corporation”) by the SBOE. If the PSF Corporation is created, the SBOE would delegate to the PSF Corporation the SBOE’s authority to manage and invest the Fund. Also, the bill would limit the authority of the SLB to manage and invest the Fund if the PSF Corporation is created. The SBOE is not required to create the PSF Corporation, but if it does not do so by December 31, 2022, then the statutory changes related to the SLB do not take effect. While the creation of the PSF Corporation is not mandatory, it is expected that the SBOE will create the PSF Corporation.

As required by State law, the Legislative Budget Board (“LBB”) issued a fiscal note on SB 1232. The fiscal notes stated that uncertainty exists regarding the nature of future returns and the effect of the bill on distributions from all components of the PSF to the ASF, such that the financial impact of the bill cannot be determined at this time. However, the fiscal note states that TEA and the GLO project that the changes effected by the bill will have a positive fiscal impact in terms of growth of the Fund and future Fund distributions. SB 1232 provides for various transition dates relating to implementation of the bill, with the latest dates generally in calendar year 2023. As a result, the planning and implementation of the creation and operation of the PSF Corporation by the SBOE and future PSF Corporation board members will necessarily evolve over time with much of the detail relating to those matters yet to be determined.

Among other provisions, of the bill, it provides that the PSF Corporation, the SBOE and TEA shall coordinate to determine the PSF Corporation’s role in the operation and management of the Guarantee Program to ensure the proper and efficient operation of the program.

The description of SB 1232 that follows summarizes some key provisions of the bill. The full text of the bill can be found at <https://capitol.texas.gov/BillLookup/Text.aspx?LegSess=87R&Bill=SB1232>.

If created, the PSF Corporation will be a special-purpose governmental corporation and instrumentality of the State and will be entitled to sovereign immunity. The PSF Corporation will be governed by nine-member board of directors (the “Board”), consisting of five members of the SBOE, the Land Commissioner, and three appointed members who have substantial background and expertise in investments and asset management; with one of the appointees being appointed by the Land Commissioner and the other two appointed by the Governor with confirmation by the Senate. The chief executive officer of the PSF Corporation will be employed by the Board and will have responsibility for engaging all employees, all of whom will be State employees. Among other powers, the PSF Corporation will be exempt from State laws regulating or limiting purchasing by State agencies and it will be authorized to engage in any activity necessary to manage the investments of the PSF, including contracting in connection with the investment of the PSF to the extent the activity complies with applicable fiduciary duties.

The bill grants the PSF Corporation discretion in determining the applicability to the corporation of certain State laws, including personnel and compensation, purchasing, information technology, and other support services.

SB 1232 authorizes the SBOE to delegate investment authority over the PSF and the Charter District Reserve Fund to the PSF Corporation. In addition, the bill provides for the dissolution of the Liquid Account (which held approximately \$4 billion at the close of fiscal year 2020) and the blending of amounts therein into the general investment portfolio of the PSF, subjecting such amounts to the general asset allocation of the PSF.

The PSF Corporation would be vested with the power to make distributions from the PSF to the ASF subject to the limitations of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment.

Not less than once each year, the Board would be required to submit an audit report to the LBB regarding the operations of the PSF Corporation. The PSF Corporation may contract with a certified public accountant or the State Auditor to conduct an independent audit of the operations of the PSF Corporation, but such authorization would not affect the State Auditor’s authority to conduct an audit of the PSF Corporation in accordance with other State laws.

The bill amends provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code (the “NRC”) that pertain to the authority of the SLB to manage public school land by limiting investments by the SLB to “real property holdings,” which are defined to mean direct or indirect interests in real property located in the State or any interest in a joint venture whose primary purpose is the acquisition, development, holding, and disposing of real property located in the State. The bill excludes from the definition of “real property holdings” any interest in an “investment vehicle,” and requires SLB to transfer mineral revenues to the PSF Corporation monthly. The determination of whether to make a direct transfer to the ASF from the revenues of the land or other properties is presently made by SLB, and the decision as to whether to make a direct transfer to the ASF, and the amount of such transfer, is solely within the purview of the SLB. That authorization would continue after creation of the PSF Corporation and implementation of the proposed changes set forth in SB 1232.

### **Asset Allocation of Fund Portfolios**

With respect to the management of the Fund’s financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even-numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of each even-numbered year, most recently in July 2020. The Fund’s Investment Policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and

return volatility of the portfolio. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The most recent asset allocation of the PSF(SBOE), approved by the SBOE in July 2020, is set forth below, along with the current asset allocations of the PSF(SLB) and the asset allocation of the Liquid Account. The next scheduled review of the PSF(SBOE) asset allocation is July 2022. See "2021 Legislation – SB 1232" for a discussion of proposed changes in the management of the Fund that could affect the responsibility for review of the asset allocation and the timing of asset allocation review, as well as elimination of the Liquid Account.

### PSF Strategic Asset Allocations

	<b>PSF Total</b>	<b>PSF(SBOE)</b>	<b>PSF(SLB)</b>	<b>Liquid Account</b>
<b>Equity Total</b>	47%	52%	0%	40%
<b>Public Equity Total</b>	34%	37%	0%	40%
<b>Large Cap US Equity</b>	13%	14%	0%	20%
<b>Small/Mid Cap US Equity</b>	5%	6%	0%	5%
<b>International Equities</b>	13%	14%	0%	15%
<b>Emerging Markets Equity</b>	2%	3%	0%	0%
<b>Private Equity</b>	13%	15%	0%	0%
<b>Fixed Income Total</b>	27%	25%	0%	40%
<b>Core Bonds</b>	11%	12%	0%	10%
<b>High Yield</b>	2%	3%	0%	0%
<b>Emerging Markets Debt</b>	6%	7%	0%	0%
<b>Treasuries</b>	2%	3%	0%	0%
<b>TIPS</b>	3%	0%	0%	5%
<b>Short Duration</b>	2%	0%	0%	25%
<b>Alternative Investments Total</b>	25%	22%	100%	
<b>Absolute Return</b>	6%	7%	0%	0%
<b>Real Estate</b>	12%	11%	33%	0%
<b>Real Return</b>	1%	4%	0%	0%
<b>Energy</b>	3%	0%	35%	0%
<b>Infrastructure</b>	3%	0%	32%	0%
<b>Emerging Manager Program</b>	0%	1%	0%	0%
<b>Cash</b>	2%	0%	0%	20%

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund has been implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified.

The table below sets forth the comparative investments of the PSF(SBOE) for the years ending August 31, 2019 and 2020.

*[Remainder of page intentionally left blank]*

## Comparative Investment Schedule - PSF(SBOE)<sup>1</sup>

Fair Value (in millions) August 31, 2020 and 2019				
ASSET CLASS	August 31, 2020	August 31, 2019	Amount of Increase (Decrease)	Percent Change
<b>EQUITY</b>				
Domestic Small Cap	\$ 2,005.8	\$1,645.8	\$ 360.0	21.9%
Domestic Large Cap	5,106.3	4,643.7	462.6	10.0%
Total Domestic Equity	7,112.1	6,289.5	822.6	13.1%
International Equity	6,380.9	5,676.3	704.6	12.4%
<b>TOTAL EQUITY</b>	<b>13,493.0</b>	<b>11,965.8</b>	<b>1,527.2</b>	<b>12.8%</b>
<b>FIXED INCOME</b>				
Domestic Fixed Income	4,232.6	4,575.2	(342.6)	-7.5%
U.S. Treasuries	918.7	-	918.7	N/A
Emerging Market Debt	2,450.7	2,410.4	40.3	1.7%
<b>TOTAL FIXED INCOME</b>	<b>7,602.0</b>	<b>6,985.6</b>	<b>616.4</b>	<b>8.8%</b>
<b>ALTERNATIVE INVESTMENTS</b>				
Absolute Return	3,517.2	3,622.6	(105.4)	-2.9%
Real Estate	3,102.1	2,983.5	118.6	4.0%
Private Equity	4,761.5	3,872.8	888.7	22.9%
Risk Parity	1,164.9	2,557.6	(1,392.7)	-54.5%
Real Return	2,047.4	2,109.3	(61.9)	-2.9%
<b>TOT ALT INVESTMENTS</b>	<b>14,593.1</b>	<b>15,145.8</b>	<b>(552.7)</b>	<b>-3.6%</b>
UNALLOCATED CASH	122.9	163.3	(40.4)	-24.7%
<b>TOTAL PSF(SBOE) INVESTMENTS</b>	<b>\$ 35,811.0</b>	<b>\$ 34,260.5</b>	<b>\$ 1,550.5</b>	<b>4.5%</b>

Source: PSF Annual Report for year ended August 31, 2020.

<sup>1</sup> The investments shown in the table above at August 31, 2020 do not fully reflect the changes made to the PSF Strategic Asset Allocation in 2020, as those changes were still being phased in at the end of the fiscal year.

In accordance with legislation enacted during 2019, the PSF has established the Liquid Account for purposes of investing cash received from the SLB to be invested in liquid assets and managed by the SBOE in the same manner it manages the PSF. That cash was previously included in the PSF valuation but was held and invested by the State Comptroller. In July 2020, the SBOE adopted an asset allocation policy for the Liquid Account (shown above), which, when adopted, was expected to be fully implemented in the first calendar quarter of fiscal year 2022. See "2021 Legislation – SB 1232" for a discussion of proposed changes in the management of the Fund that could result in the dissolution of the Liquid Account and a blending of assets held in the Liquidity Account into the general investment portfolio of the Fund.

The table below sets forth the investments of the Liquid Account for the year ended August 31, 2020.

### Liquid Account Fair Value at August 31, 2020<sup>1</sup>

<b>ASSET CLASS</b>	
Fixed Income	
Short-Term Fixed Income	\$1,597.3
Unallocated Cash	<u>2,453.3</u>
<b>Total Liquid Account Investments</b>	<b><u>\$4,050.6</u></b>

<sup>1</sup> In millions of dollars.

Source: PSF Annual Report for year ended August 31, 2020.

The table below sets forth the comparative investments of the PSF(SLB) for the years ending August 31, 2019 and 2020.

## Comparative Investment Schedule - PSF(SLB)

Fair Value (in millions) August 31, 2020 and 2019

Asset Class	As of 8-31-20	As of 8-31-19	Increase (Decrease)	Percent Change
Discretionary Real Assets Investments				
Externally Managed				
Real Assets Investment Funds <sup>1</sup>				
Energy/Minerals	\$1,164.0	\$1,667.6	\$(503.6)	-30.2%
Infrastructure	1,485.4	1,226.3	259.1	21.1%
Real Estate	1,174.8	1,033.6	141.2	13.7%
Internally Managed Direct				
Real Estate Investments	219.5	247.3	(27.8)	-11.2%
Total Discretionary				
Real Assets Investments	4,043.7	4,174.8	(131.1)	-3.1%
Dom. Equity Rec'd as In-Kind Distribution	0.9	1.3	(0.4)	-30.8%
Sovereign and Other Lands	408.6	372.3	36.3	9.8%
Mineral Interests	2,115.4	3,198.2	(1,082.8)	-33.9%
Cash at State Treasury <sup>2</sup>	333.8	4,457.3	(4,123.5)	-92.5%
Total PSF(SLB)				
Investments	\$6,902.4	\$12,203.9	\$(5,301.5)	-43.4%

<sup>1</sup> The fair values of externally managed real assets investment funds, separate accounts, and co-investment vehicles are estimated using the most recent valuations available, adjusted for subsequent contributions and withdrawals.

<sup>2</sup> Cash at State Treasury represents amounts that have been deposited in the State Treasury and temporarily invested in short-term investments until called for investment by the external real assets investment funds, separate accounts, and co-investment vehicles to which PSF(SLB) has made capital commitments. Prior to September 1, 2019, PSF(SLB) was required by statute to deposit cash designated by the SLB for investment in real assets in the State Treasury until it is drawn for investment. After September 1, 2019, that cash was moved to the Liquid Account to be invested by the SBOE.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets and other capital markets in the United States and abroad, which may be affected by different levels of economic activity; decisions of political officeholders; significant adverse weather events and the market impact of domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity threats and events; changes in international trade policies or practices; application of the Prudent Person Standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and, PSF operational limitations impacted by Texas law or legislative appropriation. See "2021 Legislation – SB 1232" for a discussion of proposed changes in the management of the Fund that may affect these factors. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or regulations or the implementation of new accounting standards.

### The School District Bond Guarantee Program

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Education Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Education Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Education Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The



Education Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding “intercept” feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Education Commissioner to order a school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Education Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district’s default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a “bond enhancement agreement” or a “credit agreement,” unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Education Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the “SDBGP Rules”) limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65 and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

### **The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the “CDBGP Rules”). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67 and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Education Commissioner for designation as a “charter district” and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of March 2021 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 6.83%. At August 19, 2021, there were 191 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 888 charter school campuses active under such charters (though as of such date, 53 of such campuses are not currently serving students for various reasons). Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Education Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see “Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program.” The Act provides that the Education Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Education Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District

Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Education Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Education Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Education Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Education Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Education Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment charter school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess of \$500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purpose described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBGP Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder; (iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Education Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBGP Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.

From time to time, TEA has limited new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to capacity limits specified by the Act. Legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modified the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Capacity"), which further increased the amount of the CDBGP Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely makes available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program a greater share of capacity in the Guarantee Program. The CDBGP Capacity is made available from the capacity of the Guarantee Program, but is not reserved exclusively for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

See “Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program” and “2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.” Other factors that could increase the CDBGP Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBGP Capacity, as described below, changes in State or federal law or regulations related to the Guarantee Program limit, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Guarantee Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

### Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited to the lessor of that imposed by State law (the “State Capacity Limit”) and that imposed by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the “IRS Limit”, with the limit in effect at any given time being the “Capacity Limit”). From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

Prior to 2007, various legislation was enacted modifying the calculation of the State Capacity limit; however, in 2007, Senate Bill 389 (“SB 389”) was enacted, providing for increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provided that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. Additionally, on May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the SDBGP Rules, and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Education Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program but also provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Education Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See “Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds” below.

Since September 2015, the SBOE has periodically voted to change the capacity multiplier as shown in the following table.

<u>Changes in SBOE-determined multiplier for State law capacity</u>	
<u>Date</u>	<u>Multiplier</u>
Prior to May 2010	2.50
May 2010	3.00
September 2015	3.25
February 2017	3.50
September 2017	3.75
February 2018 (current)	3.50

Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund’s assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the “IRS Notice”) stating that the IRS would issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16, 2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by the PSF, together with the then outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provided that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the “Proposed IRS Regulations”) that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations became effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the “Final IRS Regulations”). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009, multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was \$23,463,730,608 (estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately \$117.3 billion.

In September 2015, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The State Law Capacity increased from \$123,509,204,770 on August 31, 2019 to \$128,247,002,583 on August 31, 2020 (but at such date the IRS Limit (\$117,318,653,038) remained the lower of the two, so it is the current Capacity Limit for the Fund).

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds (the "Capacity Reserve"). The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5% and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP Capacity. The Education Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Education Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/), which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general could be adversely affected by a number of factors, including Fund investment performance, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, changes in State laws that implement funding decisions for school districts and charter districts, which could adversely affect the credit quality of those districts, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or significant changes in distributions to the ASF. The issuance of the IRS Notice and the Final IRS Regulations resulted in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. As the amount of guaranteed bonds approaches the IRS Limit, the SBOE is seeking changes to the existing IRS guidance regarding the Guarantee Program with the objective of obtaining an increase in the IRS Limit, but no assurances can be given that the IRS will issue guidance that would increase the IRS Limit. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program has also increased the total amount of guaranteed bonds.

### **2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The CDBGP Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 ("SB 1480") was enacted. SB 1480 amended the Act to modify how the CDBGP Capacity is established effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBGP Capacity was calculated as the Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. SB 1480 amended the CDBGP Capacity calculation so that the Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby increasing the CDBGP Capacity. SB 1480 provided for the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBGP Capacity to begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State's fiscal year 2022) but authorized the SBOE discretion to increase the CDBGP Capacity incrementally in the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018 by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017, which it has done.

The percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population has grown from 3.53% in September 2012 to 6.83% in March 2021. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBGP Capacity, SB 1480 provided that the Education Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Education Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Education Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBGP Rules previously required the Education Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that

each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Education Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10% of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Education Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20% of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to 3.00% of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. At July 31, 2021, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained \$63,249,051, which represented approximately 2.02% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. In 2018, the management of the Reserve Fund was transferred from the Texas Comptroller to the PSF division of TEA, where it is held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff.

### **Charter District Risk Factors**

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. Additionally, the amount of State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district, and may be affected by the State's economic performance and other budgetary considerations and various political considerations.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, State funding for charter district facilities construction is limited to a program established by the Legislature in 2017, which provides \$60 million per year for eligible charter districts with an acceptable performance rating for a variety of funding purposes, including for lease or purchase payments for instructional facilities. Since State funding for charter facilities is limited, charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

As a general rule, the operation of a charter school involves fewer State requirements and regulations for charter holders as compared to other public schools, but the maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon ongoing compliance with State law and regulations, which are monitored by TEA. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school. Charter holders are governed by a private board of directors, as compared to the elected boards of trustees that govern school districts.

As described above, the Act includes a funding "intercept" function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the "educator of last resort" for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the Act established the Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF.

### **Infectious Disease Outbreak**

Since the onset of the COVID-19 pandemic in March 2020, TEA and TEA investment management for the PSF have continued to operate and function pursuant to the TEA continuity of operations plan developed as mandated in accordance with Texas Labor Code Section 412.054. That plan was designed to ensure performance of the Agency's essential missions and functions under such threats and conditions in the event of, among other emergencies, a pandemic event.

Results of the PSF operations through the fiscal year ended August 31, 2020 and at other periodic points in time are set forth herein or incorporated herein by reference. Fund management is of the view that since the onset of the pandemic the Fund has performed generally in accordance with its portfolio benchmarks and with returns generally seen in the national and international investment markets in which the Fund is invested (see “Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2020”).

Circumstances regarding the COVID-19 pandemic continue to evolve; for additional information on these events in the State, reference is made to the website of the Governor, <https://gov.texas.gov/>, and, with respect to public school events, the website of TEA, <https://tea.texas.gov/texas-schools/safe-and-healthy-schools/coronavirus-covid-19-support-and-guidance>.

TEA cannot predict whether any school or charter district may experience short- or longer-term cash flow emergencies as a direct or indirect effect of COVID-19 that would require a payment from the PSF to be made to a paying agent for a guaranteed bond. However, through the end of July 2021, no school district or charter district had failed to perform with respect to making required payments on their guaranteed bonds. Information regarding the respective financial operations of the issuer of bonds guaranteed, or to be guaranteed, by the PSF is provided by such issuers in their respective bond offering documents and the TEA takes no responsibility for the respective information, as it is provided by the respective issuers.

For information on the September 2020 special, one-time transfer of \$300 million from the portion of the PSF managed by the SBOE to the portion of the PSF managed by the SLB, that was made in light of the public health and economic circumstances resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic and its impact on the school children of Texas, see “The Total Return Constitutional Amendment.”

#### **Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program**

Moody’s Investors Service, S&P Global Ratings and Fitch Ratings rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF “Aaa,” “AAA” and “AAA,” respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See “Ratings” herein.

#### **Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds**

<b>Permanent School Fund Valuations</b>		
<b>Fiscal Year Ended 8/31</b>	<b>Book Value<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Market Value<sup>(1)</sup></b>
2016	\$30,128,037,903	\$37,279,799,335
2017	31,870,581,428	41,438,672,573
2018	33,860,358,647	44,074,197,940
2019	35,288,344,219	46,464,447,981
2020 <sup>(2)</sup>	36,642,000,738	46,764,059,745

<sup>(1)</sup> SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

<sup>(2)</sup> At August 31, 2020, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately \$13.4 million, \$200.4 million, \$4,255.4 million, \$7.5 million, and \$333.8 million, respectively, and market values of approximately \$2,115.4 million, \$628.1 million, \$3,824.2 million, \$0.9 million, and \$333.8 million, respectively.

At July 31, 2021, the PSF had a book value of \$38,340,467,590 and a market value of \$53,232,714,384. July 31, 2021 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

<b>Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds</b>	
<u>At 8/31</u>	<u>Principal Amount<sup>(1)</sup></u>
2016	\$68,303,328,445
2017	74,266,090,023
2018	79,080,901,069
2019	84,397,900,203
2020	90,336,680,245 <sup>(2)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> At August 31, 2020 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts and charter districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was \$139,992,934,246, of which \$49,656,254,001 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2020, there were \$90,336,680,245 in principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. Using the IRS Limit of \$117,318,653,038 (the IRS Limit is currently the Capacity Limit), net of the Capacity Reserve, as of July 31, 2021, 5.66% of the Guarantee Program's capacity was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. As of August 31, 2020 and July 31, 2021, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 77.00% and 81.07%, respectively, of the Capacity Limit (which is currently the IRS Limit). July 31, 2021 data is unaudited and is subject to adjustment.

#### **Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category<sup>(1)</sup>**

Fiscal Year Ended	<u>School District Bonds</u>		<u>Charter District Bonds</u>		<u>Totals</u>	
	<u>No. of 8/31 Issues</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>	<u>No. of Issues</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>	<u>No. of Issues</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>
2016	3,244	\$67,342,303,445	35	\$ 961,025,000	3,279	\$68,303,328,445
2017	3,253	72,884,480,023	40	1,381,610,000	3,293	74,266,090,023
2018	3,249	77,647,966,069	44	1,432,935,000	3,293	79,080,901,069
2019	3,297	82,537,755,203	49	1,860,145,000	3,346	84,397,900,203
2020 <sup>(2)</sup>	3,296	87,800,478,245	64	2,536,202,000	3,360	90,336,680,245

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> At July 31, 2021 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were \$95,115,492,855 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,390 school district issues, aggregating \$91,990,680,855 in principal amount and 76 charter district issues, aggregating \$3,124,812,000 in principal amount. At July 31, 2021, the CDBG Capacity was \$6,309,019,662 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment).

#### **Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2020**

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2020, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management's Discussion and Analysis contained therein. Reference is made to the Annual Report, as filed with the MSRB, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) and, with respect to the Liquid Account, Liquid(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2020, the Fund's land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the five-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF(SBOE) asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF(SBOE) investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2020, the Fund balance was \$46.7 billion, an increase of \$0.2 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested and restatements of fund balance. During the year, the SBOE updated the long-term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund, and initiated the strategic asset allocation for the Liquid(SBOE). The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2020, net of fees, were 7.50%, 7.55% and 8.19%, respectively, and the Liquid(SBOE) annual rate of return for the one-year period

ending August 31, 2020, net of fees, was 2.35% (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund's investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, five-year, and ten-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) externally managed real assets, net of fees and including cash, were -12.27%, 2.49%, and 5.15%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund's assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. See "Comparative Investment Schedule - PSF(SBOE)" for the PSF(SBOE) holdings as of August 31, 2020.

As of August 31, 2020, the SBOE has approved, and the Fund made capital commitments to, externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of \$5.7 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of \$7.5 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2020, totaled \$2.0 billion in real estate investments and \$2.4 billion in private equity investments.

#### PSF Returns Fiscal Year Ended 8-31-2020<sup>1</sup>

<u>Portfolio</u>	<u>Return</u>	<u>Benchmark Return<sup>2</sup></u>
Total PSF(SBOE) Portfolio	7.50%	8.54%
Domestic Large Cap Equities(SBOE)	22.37	21.94
Domestic Small/Mid Cap Equities(SBOE)	3.44	2.83
International Equities(SBOE)	8.80	8.31
Emerging Market Equity(SBOE)	15.84	14.49
Fixed Income(SBOE)	5.50	6.47
Absolute Return(SBOE)	4.43	7.19
Real Estate(SBOE)	2.93	1.26
Private Equity(SBOE)	4.63	4.85
Risk Parity(SBOE)	2.41	16.20
Real Return(SBOE)	3.33	2.85
Emerging Market Debt(SBOE)	1.67	1.55
Liquid Short-Term Fixed Income(SBOE)	2.78	3.40
Liquid Transition Cash Reserves(SBOE)	1.62	1.26
Liquid Combined(SBOE)	2.35	2.04
PSF(SLB)	-12.27	N/A

<sup>1</sup> Time weighted rates of return adjusted for cash flows for the PSF(SBOE) investment assets. Does not include GLO managed real estate or real assets. Returns are net of fees. Source: PSF Annual Report for year ended August 31, 2020.

<sup>2</sup> Benchmarks are as set forth in the PSF Annual Report for year ended August 31, 2020.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2020, the remaining commitments totaled approximately \$2.73 billion.

For fiscal year 2020, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled \$2.0 billion, a decrease of \$1.7 billion from fiscal year 2019 earnings of \$3.7 billion. This decrease reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2020. In fiscal year 2020, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.



Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, decreased 5.6% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2020. This decrease is primarily attributable to a decrease in PSF(SLB) quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund directly supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2019 and 2020, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled \$1.2 billion and \$1.1 billion, respectively. Distributions from the SLB to the ASF for fiscal years 2019 and 2020 totaled \$300 and \$600 million, respectively.

At the end of the 2020 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed \$90.3 billion in bonds issued by 872 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Guarantee Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 7,789 school district and charter district bond issues totaling \$202.1 billion in principal amount. During the 2020 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program totaled 3,360. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by \$5.9 billion or 7.0%. The State Capacity Limit increased by \$4.7 billion, or 3.8%, during fiscal year 2020 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund used to calculate that Program capacity limit. The effective capacity of the Guarantee Program did not increase during fiscal year 2020 as the IRS Limit was reached in a prior fiscal year, and it is the lower of the two State and federal capacity limits for the Guarantee Program.

### **Other Events and Disclosures**

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in April 2018. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq. and is available on the TEA web site at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.5>.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund.

The TEA received an appropriation of \$30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2016 and 2017, respectively, and \$30.4 million for each of the fiscal years 2018 and 2019.

As of August 31, 2020, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

### **PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking**

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund\\_Disclosure\\_Statement\\_-\\_Bond\\_Guarantee\\_Program/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_Statement_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/). The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on February 1, 2019, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guarantee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c2-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access (“EMMA”) system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org), and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at <https://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/Details/ER355077> or by searching for “Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program” on EMMA.

## **Annual Reports**

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading “THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM.” The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State’s current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

## **Event Notices**

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes of the Guarantee Program; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (15) the incurrence of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a financial obligation of

the Guarantee Program, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, any of which reflect financial difficulties. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

### **Availability of Information**

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

### **Limitations and Agreements**

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of Rule 15c2-12 are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

### **SEC Exemptive Relief**

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the "small issuer exemption" set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established

by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than \$10 million of outstanding municipal securities.

## **AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES**

*The following is a summary of certain provisions of State law as it relates to ad valorem taxation and is not intended to be complete. Prospective investors are encouraged to review Title I of the Texas Tax Code, as amended (the "Property Tax Code"), for identification of property subject to ad valorem taxation, property exempt or which may be exempted from ad valorem taxation if claimed, the appraisal of property for ad valorem tax purposes, and the procedures and limitations applicable to the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes.*

### **Valuation of Taxable Property**

The Property Tax Code provides for county-wide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board (the "Appraisal Review Board") responsible for appraising property for all taxing units within the county. The appraisal of property within the District is the responsibility of the Throckmorton Central Appraisal District (the "Appraisal District"). Except as generally described below, the Appraisal District is required to appraise all property within the Appraisal District on the basis of 100% of its market value and is prohibited from applying any assessment ratios. In determining market value of property, the Appraisal District is required to consider the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and the market data comparison method of appraisal, and use the method the chief appraiser of the Appraisal District considers most appropriate. The Property Tax Code requires appraisal districts to reappraise all property in its jurisdiction at least once every three (3) years. A taxing unit may require annual review at its own expense and is entitled to challenge the determination of appraised value of property within the taxing unit by petition filed with the Appraisal Review Board.

State law requires the appraised value of an owner's principal residence ("homestead" or "homesteads") to be based solely on the property's value as a homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a homestead to the lesser of (1) the market value of the property, or (2) 110% of the appraised value of the property for the preceding tax year plus the market value of all new improvements to the property.

State law provides that eligible owners of both agricultural land and open-space land, including open-space land devoted to farm or ranch purposes or open-space land devoted to timber production, may elect to have such property appraised for property taxation on the basis of its productive capacity. The same land may not be qualified as both agricultural and open-space land.

The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District are subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board. The appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by taxing units, such as the District, in establishing their tax rolls and tax rates. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES — District and Taxpayer Remedies" herein.

### **State Mandated Homestead Exemptions**

State law grants, with respect to each school district in the State, (1) a \$25,000 exemption of the appraised value of all homesteads, (2) a \$10,000 exemption of the appraised value of the homesteads of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older and the disabled, and (3) various exemptions for disabled veterans and their families, surviving spouses of members of the armed services killed in action and surviving spouses of first responders killed or fatally wounded in the line of duty.

### **Local Option Homestead Exemptions**

The governing body of a taxing unit, including a city, county, school district, or special district, at its option may grant: (1) an exemption of up to 20% of the appraised value of all homesteads (but not less than \$5,000); and (2) an additional exemption of at least \$3,000 of the appraised value of the homesteads of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older and the disabled. Each taxing unit decides if it will offer the local option homestead exemptions and at what percentage or dollar amount, as applicable. The exemption described in (2) above may also be created, increased, decreased or repealed at an election called by the governing body of a taxing unit upon presentment of a petition for such creation, increase, decrease, or repeal of at least 20% of the number of qualified voters who voted in the preceding election of the taxing unit.

## **State Mandated Freeze on School District Taxes**

Except for increases attributable to certain improvements, a school district is prohibited from increasing the total ad valorem tax on the homestead of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older or of disabled persons above the amount of tax imposed in the year such homestead qualified for such exemption. This freeze is transferable to a different homestead if a qualifying taxpayer moves and, under certain circumstances, is also transferable to the surviving spouse of a person sixty-five (65) years of age or older, but not the disabled.

## **Personal Property**

Tangible personal property (furniture, machinery, supplies, inventories, etc.) used in the "production of income" is taxed based on the property's market value. Taxable personal property includes income-producing equipment and inventory. Intangibles such as goodwill, accounts receivable, and proprietary processes are not taxable. Tangible personal property not held or used for production of income, such as household goods, automobiles or light trucks, and boats, is exempt from ad valorem taxation unless the governing body of a taxing unit elects to tax such property.

## **Freeport and Goods-In-Transit Exemptions**

Certain goods that are acquired in or imported into the State to be forwarded outside the State, and are detained in the State for 175 days or fewer for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication ("Freeport Property") are exempt from ad valorem taxation unless a taxing unit took official action to tax Freeport Property before April 1, 1990 and has not subsequently taken official action to exempt Freeport Property. Decisions to continue taxing Freeport Property may be reversed in the future; decisions to exempt Freeport Property are not subject to reversal.

Certain goods, that are acquired in or imported into the State to be forwarded to another location within or without the State, stored in a location that is not owned by the owner of the goods and are transported to another location within or without the State within 175 days ("Goods-in-Transit"), are generally exempt from ad valorem taxation; however, the Property Tax Code permits a taxing unit, on a local option basis, to tax Goods-in-Transit if the taxing unit takes official action, after conducting a public hearing, before January 1 of the first tax year in which the taxing unit proposes to tax Goods-in-Transit. Goods-in-Transit and Freeport Property do not include oil, natural gas or petroleum products, and Goods-in-Transit does not include aircraft or special inventories such as manufactured housing inventory, or a dealer's motor vehicle, boat, or heavy equipment inventory.

A taxpayer may receive only one of the Goods-in-Transit or Freeport Property exemptions for items of personal property.

## **Other Exempt Property**

Other major categories of exempt property include property owned by the State or its political subdivisions if used for public purposes, property exempt by federal law, property used for pollution control, farm products owned by producers, property of nonprofit corporations used for scientific research or educational activities benefitting a college or university, designated historic sites, solar and wind-powered energy devices, and certain classes of intangible personal property.

## **Temporary Exemption for Qualified Property Damaged by a Disaster**

The Property Tax Code entitles the owner of certain qualified (i) tangible personal property used for the production of income, (ii) improvements to real property, and (iii) manufactured homes located in an area declared by the governor to be a disaster area following a disaster and is at least 15 percent damaged by the disaster, as determined by the chief appraiser, to an exemption from taxation of a portion of the appraised value of the property. The amount of the exemption ranges from 15 percent to 100 percent based upon the damage assessment rating assigned by the chief appraiser. Except in situations where the territory is declared a disaster on or after the date the taxing unit adopts a tax rate for the year in which the disaster declaration is issued, the governing body of the taxing unit is not required to take any action in order for the taxpayer to be eligible for the exemption. If a taxpayer qualifies for the exemption after the beginning of the tax year, the amount of the exemption is prorated based on the number of days left in the tax year following the day on which the governor declares the area to be a disaster area. For more information on the exemption, reference is made to Section 11.35 of the Property Tax Code, as amended. Section 11.35 of the Property Tax Code was enacted during the 2019 legislative session, and there is no judicial precedent for how the statute will be applied. Texas Attorney General Opinion KP-0299, issued on April 13, 2020, concluded a court would likely find the Texas Legislature intended to limit the temporary tax exemption to apply to property physically harmed as a result of a declared disaster. Thus, purely economic, non-physical damage to property caused by the COVID-19 disaster is likely not eligible for the temporary tax exemption provided by Section 11.35 of the Tax Code. Tex. Att'y Gen. Op. No. KP-0299 (2020).

## **Tax Increment Reinvestment Zones**

A city or county, by petition of the landowners or by action of its governing body, may create one or more tax increment reinvestment zones ("TIRZ") within its boundaries. At the time of the creation of the TIRZ, a "base value" for the real property in the TIRZ is established and the difference between any increase in the assessed valuation of taxable real property in the TIRZ in excess of the base value is known as the "tax increment." During the existence of the TIRZ, all or a portion of the taxes levied against the tax increment by a city or county, and all other overlapping taxing units that elected to participate, are restricted to paying only planned project and financing costs within the TIRZ and are not available for the payment of other obligations of such taxing units.

Until September 1, 1999, school districts were able to reduce the value of taxable property reported to the State to reflect any taxable value lost due to TIRZ participation by the school district. The ability of the school district to deduct the taxable value of the tax increment that it contributed prevented the school district from being negatively affected in terms of state school funding. However, due to a change in law, local M&O tax rate revenue contributed to a TIRZ created on or after May 31, 1999 will count toward a school district's Tier One entitlement (reducing Tier One State funds for eligible school districts) and will not be considered in calculating any school district's Tier Two entitlement. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - State Funding for School Districts" herein.

## **Tax Limitation Agreements**

The Texas Economic Development Act (Chapter 313, Texas Tax Code, as amended), allows school districts to grant limitations on appraised property values to certain corporations and limited liability companies to encourage economic development within the school district. Generally, during the last eight (8) years of the ten-year term of a tax limitation agreement, a school district may only levy and collect M&O taxes on the agreed-to limited appraised property value. For the purposes of calculating its Tier One and Tier Two entitlements, the portion of a school district's property that is not fully taxable is excluded from the school district's taxable property values. Therefore, a school district will not be subject to a reduction in Tier One or Tier Two State funds as a result of lost M&O tax revenues due to entering into a tax limitation agreement. The 87th Texas Legislature did not vote to extend this program, which is now scheduled to expire by its terms, effective December 31, 2022. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - State Funding for School Districts" herein.

For a discussion of how the various exemptions described above are applied by the District, see "THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT" herein.

## **District and Taxpayer Remedies**

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the District, may appeal the determinations of the Appraisal District by timely initiating a protest with the Appraisal Review Board. Additionally, taxing units such as the District may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Property Tax Code.

Beginning in the 2020 tax year, owners of certain property with a taxable value in excess of the current year "minimum eligibility amount," as determined by the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas, and situated in a county with a population of one million or more, may protest the determinations of an appraisal district directly to a three-member special panel of the appraisal review board, appointed by the chairman of the appraisal review board, consisting of highly qualified professionals in the field of property tax appraisal. The minimum eligibility amount is set at \$50 million for the 2020 tax year and is adjusted annually by the State Comptroller to reflect the inflation rate.

The Property Tax Code sets forth notice and hearing procedures for certain tax rate increases by the District and provides for taxpayer referenda that could result in the repeal of certain tax increases. See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS — Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate" herein. The Property Tax Code also establishes a procedure for providing notice to property owners of reappraisals reflecting increased property value, appraisals which are higher than renditions, and appraisals of property not previously on an appraisal roll.

## **Levy and Collection of Taxes**

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes, unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty of six percent (6%) of the amount of the tax for the first calendar month it is delinquent, plus one percent (1%) for each additional month or portion of a month the tax remains unpaid prior to July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent. If the tax is not paid by July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent, the tax incurs a total penalty of twelve percent (12%) regardless of the number of months the tax has been delinquent and incurs an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) if imposed by the District. The delinquent tax also accrues interest at a rate of one percent (1%) for each month or portion of a month it remains unpaid. The Property Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and

the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes for certain taxpayers. Furthermore, the District may provide, on a local option basis, for the split payment, partial payment, and discounts for early payment of taxes under certain circumstances. The Property Tax Code permits taxpayers owning homes or certain businesses located in a disaster area and damaged as a direct result of the declared disaster to pay taxes imposed in the year following the disaster in four equal installments without penalty or interest, commencing on February 1 and ending on August 1. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Temporary Exemption for Qualified Property Damaged by a Disaster" herein for further information related to a discussion of the applicability of this section of the Property Tax Code.

### **District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies**

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all state and local taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The lien exists in favor of each taxing unit, including the District, having power to tax the property. The District's tax lien is on a parity with tax liens of such other taxing units. A tax lien on real property takes priority over the claim of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien; however, whether a lien of the United States is on a parity with or takes priority over a tax lien of the District is determined by applicable federal law. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

At any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property.

Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, adverse market conditions, taxpayer redemption rights, or bankruptcy proceedings which restrain the collection of a taxpayer's debt.

Federal bankruptcy law provides that an automatic stay of actions by creditors and other entities, including governmental units, goes into effect with the filing of any petition in bankruptcy. The automatic stay prevents governmental units from foreclosing on property and prevents liens for post-petition taxes from attaching to property and obtaining secured creditor status unless, in either case, an order lifting the stay is obtained from the bankruptcy court. In many cases, post-petition taxes are paid as an administrative expense of the estate in bankruptcy or by order of the bankruptcy court.

### **THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT**

The Appraisal District has the responsibility for appraising property in the District as well as other taxing units within the County. The Appraisal District is governed by a board of directors appointed by members of the governing bodies of various political subdivisions within the County.

Property within the District is assessed as of January 1 of each year, taxes become due October 1 of the same year and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year.

The District's taxes are collected by the Throckmorton Central Appraisal District.

The District does not tax personal property not used in the production of income, such as personal automobiles.

The District grants a state mandated homestead exemption of \$25,000 for taxpayers who are at least 65 years of age.

The District grants a local homestead exemption of \$25,000 for taxpayers, and an additional exemption of \$10,000 for taxpayers who are at least 65 years of age or disabled.

The District collects an additional 20% penalty to defray attorney costs in the collection of delinquent taxes over and above the penalty automatically assessed under the Property Tax Code.

The District does not allow split payments and does not give discounts for early payment of taxes.

The District does not participate in a tax increment financing zone.

The District does not grant any portion of the additional local option exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads.

The District has taken action to tax goods-in-transit. The District has not granted any tax abatements.

The District has entered into an Economic Development Agreement authorized under Chapter 313, Texas Tax Code, as amended, limiting the taxable appraised value for maintenance and operations purposes, beginning tax year 2022 and extending through tax year 2031, with Azure Sky Wind Project, LLC, King Creek Wind Farm 1, LLC, and King Creek Wind Farm 2, LLC.

Charges for penalties and interest on the unpaid balance of delinquent taxes are as follows:

Month	Cumulative Penalty	Cumulative Interest	Total
February	6%	1%	7%
March	7%	2%	9%
April	8%	3%	11%
May	9%	4%	13%
June	10%	5%	15%
July	12%	6%	18%

After July, penalty remains at 12%, and interest increases at the rate of 1% each month. In addition, State law allows that, if an account is delinquent in July, an amount up to 20% attorney's collection fee may be added to the total tax penalty and interest charge.

## STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS

### Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court (the "Court") has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the "Finance System"). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") from time to time (i) met the requirements of Article VII, Section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the Legislature to "establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools," or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of Article VIII, Section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had allegedly denied school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Court's previous decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws that made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded in efforts to address the prior decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Court issued its opinion in the most recent school finance litigation, *Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer & Student Fairness Coal.*, 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) ("*Morath*"). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Court, violated Article VII, Section 1 and Article VIII, Section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Court held that "[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements." The Court also noted that:

Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding "system" is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

The Court's decision in *Morath* upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Finance System was "undeniably imperfect." While not compelled by the *Morath* decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in *Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno*, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality "would not, however, affect the district's authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system's unconstitutionality in a way that is consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions" (collectively, the "Contract Clauses"), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation, or any litigation that may be associated with such legislation, on the District's financial condition, revenues or operations. While the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District's obligation to levy an unlimited debt



service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such legislation. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" herein.

## CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM

*During the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature made numerous changes to the current public school finance system, the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes, and the calculation of defined tax rates, including particularly those contained in House Bill 3 ("HB 3") and Senate Bill 2 ("SB 2"). In some instances, the provisions of HB 3 and SB 2 will require further interpretation in connection with their implementation in order to resolve ambiguities contained in the bills. The District is still in the process of (a) analyzing the provisions of HB 3 and SB 2, and (b) monitoring the on-going guidance provided by TEA. The information contained herein under the captions "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" is subject to change, and only reflects the District's understanding of HB 3 and SB 2 based on information available to the District as of the date of this Official Statement. Prospective investors are encouraged to review HB 3, SB 2, and the Property Tax Code for definitive requirements for the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes, the calculation of the defined tax rates, and the administration of the current public school finance system.*

### Overview

The following language constitutes only a summary of the public school finance system as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 43 through 49 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each school district's boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a maintenance and operations ("M&O") tax to pay current expenses and an interest and sinking fund ("I&S") tax to pay debt service on bonds. School districts may not increase their M&O tax rate for the purpose of creating a surplus to pay debt service on bonds. Prior to 2006, school districts were authorized to levy their M&O tax at a voter-approved rate, generally up to \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. Since 2006, the State Legislature has enacted various legislation that has compressed the voter-approved M&O tax rate, as described below. Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding bonded indebtedness through the levy of an I&S tax at a rate not to exceed \$0.50 per \$100 of taxable value at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, school districts generally may levy an I&S tax sufficient to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount. See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – I&S Tax Rate Limitations" herein. Because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by school districts with the same I&S tax rate and M&O tax rate is also subject to wide variation; however, the public school finance funding formulas are designed to generally equalize local funding generated by a school district's M&O tax rate.

Prior to the 2019 Legislative Session, a school district's maximum M&O tax rate for a given tax year was determined by multiplying that school district's 2005 M&O tax rate levy by an amount equal a compression percentage set by legislative appropriation or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"). This compression percentage was historically set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value, since most school districts in the State had a voted maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. School districts were permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate up to \$0.04 above the compressed tax rate or, with voter-approval at a valid election in the school district, up to \$0.17 above the compressed tax rate (for most school districts, this equated to an M&O tax rate between \$1.04 and \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value). School districts received additional State funds in proportion to such taxing effort.

### 2021 Regular and Special Legislative Sessions

The State Legislature meets in regular session in odd-numbered years, for 140 days. The 87th Texas Legislature convened on January 12, 2021 and concluded on May 31, 2021 ("87th Regular Session").

During the 87th Regular Session, the Legislature did not make significant changes to the school finance system, State funding of school districts, nor ad valorem taxation procedures affecting school districts. When the regular Legislature is not in session, the Governor may call one or more special sessions, at the Governor's direction, each lasting no more than 30 days, and for which the Governor sets the agenda. The Governor did order a special session to commence on July 8, 2021 and ended on August 6, 2021. The Governor ordered another special session, which commenced on August 7, 2021, and which must conclude within thirty days (together, the "87th Special Session"). The Governor's agenda for the 87th Special Session does not specifically address the school finance system, school operations or funding, but does ask legislators to approve appropriations from additional available State general revenue for, among other purposes, property tax relief. During the 87th Special Session, lawmakers must consider only the items denoted by the Governor on the agenda.

The District can make no representations or predictions regarding any actions the Legislature may take during the 87th Special Session concerning the substance or the effect of any legislation that may be passed during this special session or a future session of the Legislature.

### **Local Funding for School Districts**

During the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature made several significant changes to the funding methodology for school districts (the "2019 Legislation"). The 2019 Legislation orders a school district's M&O tax rate into two distinct parts: the "Tier One Tax Rate," which is the local M&O tax rate required for a school district to receive any part of the basic level of State funding (referred to herein as "Tier One") under the Foundation School Program, as further described below, and the "Enrichment Tax Rate," which is any local M&O tax effort in excess of its Tier One Tax Rate. The 2019 Legislation amended formulas for the State Compression Percentage and Maximum Compressed Tax Rate (each as described below) to compress M&O tax rates in response to year-over-year increases in property values across the State and within a school district, respectively. The discussion in this subcaption "Local Funding For School Districts" is generally intended to describe funding provisions applicable to all school districts; however, there are distinctions in the funding formulas for school districts that generate local M&O tax revenues in excess of the school districts' funding entitlements, as further discussed under the subcaption "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Revenue Level In Excess of Entitlement" herein.

*State Compression Percentage.* The "State Compression Percentage" is the lesser of three alternative calculations: (1) 93% or a lower percentage set by appropriation for a school year; (2) a percentage determined by formula if the estimated total taxable property value of the State (as submitted annually to the State Legislature by the State Comptroller) has increased by at least 2.5% over the prior year; and (3) the prior year State Compression Percentage. For any year, the maximum State Compression Percentage is 93%.

*Maximum Compressed Tax Rate.* Pursuant to the 2019 Legislation, beginning with the State fiscal year ending in 2021 (the 2020-2021 school year) the Maximum Compressed Tax Rate (the "MCR") is the tax rate per \$100 of valuation of taxable property at which a school district must levy its Tier One Tax Rate to receive the full amount of the Tier One funding to which the school district is entitled. The MCR is equal to the lesser of three alternative calculations: (1) the school district's prior year MCR; (2) a percentage determined by formula if the school district experienced a year-over-year increase in property value of at least 2.5%; or (3) the product of the State Compression Percentage for the current year multiplied by \$1.00. However, each year the TEA shall evaluate the MCR for each school district in the State, and for any given year, if a school district's MCR is calculated to be less than 90% of any other school district's MCR for the current year, then the school district's MCR is instead equal to the school district's prior year MCR, until TEA determines that the difference between the school district's MCR and any other school district's MCR is not more than 10%. These compression formulas are intended to more closely equalize local generation of Tier One funding among districts with disparate tax bases and generally reduce the Tier One Tax Rates of school districts as property values increase.

*Tier One Tax Rate.* A school district's Tier One Tax Rate is defined as a school district's M&O tax rate levied that does not exceed the school district's MCR.

*Enrichment Tax Rate.* The Enrichment Tax Rate is the number of cents a school district levies for M&O in excess of the Tier One Tax Rate, up to an additional \$0.17. The Enrichment Tax Rate is divided into two components: (i) "Golden Pennies" which are the first \$0.08 of tax effort in excess of a school district's Tier One Tax Rate; and (ii) "Copper Pennies" which are the next \$0.09 in excess of a school district's Tier One Tax Rate plus Golden Pennies.

School districts may levy an Enrichment Tax Rate at a level of their choice, subject to the limitations described under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate"; however to levy any of the Enrichment Tax Rate in a given year, a school district must levy a Tier One Tax Rate equal to \$0.93 for the 2019-2020 school year, or equal to the school district's MCR for the 2020-2021 and subsequent years. Additionally, a school district's levy of Copper Pennies is subject to compression if the guaranteed yield (i.e., the guaranteed level of local tax revenue and State aid generated for each cent of tax effort) of Copper Pennies is increased from one year to the next. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts – Tier Two" herein.

### **State Funding for School Districts**

State funding for school districts is provided through the two-tiered Foundation School Program, which guarantees certain levels of funding for school districts in the State. School districts are entitled to a legislatively appropriated guaranteed yield on their Tier One Tax Rate and Enrichment Tax Rate. When a school district's Tier One Tax Rate and Enrichment Tax Rate generate tax revenues at a level below the respective entitlement, the State will provide "Tier One" funding or "Tier Two" funding, respectively, to fund the difference between the school district's entitlements and the calculated M&O revenues generated by the school district's respective M&O tax rates.

The first level of funding, Tier One, is the basic level of funding guaranteed to all school districts based on a school district's Tier One Tax Rate. Tier One funding may then be "enriched" with Tier Two funding. Tier Two provides a guaranteed entitlement for each cent of a school district's Enrichment Tax Rate, allowing a school district increase or decrease its Enrichment Tax Rate to supplement Tier One funding at a level of the school district's own choice. While Tier One funding may be used for the payment of debt service (except for school districts subject to the recapture provisions of Chapter 49 of the Texas Education Code, as amended, as discussed herein), and in some instances is required to be used for that purpose (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – I&S Tax Rate Limitations" herein), Tier Two funding may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

The current public school finance system also provides an Existing Debt Allotment ("EDA") to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment ("IFA") to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment ("NIFA") to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, the State Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$1,323,444,300 for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State's share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the school district's local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district's local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities, provided that a school district qualifies for such funding and that the State Legislature makes sufficient appropriations to fund the allotments for a State fiscal biennium. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the State Legislature.

Tier One. Tier One funding is the basic level of funding guaranteed to a school district, consisting of a State-appropriated baseline level of funding (the "Basic Allotment") for each student in "Average Daily Attendance" (being generally calculated as the sum of student attendance for each State-mandated day of instruction divided by the number of State-mandated days of instruction, defined herein as "ADA"). The Basic Allotment is revised downward if a school district's Tier One Tax Rate is less than the State-determined threshold. The Basic Allotment is supplemented by additional State funds, allotted based upon the unique school district characteristics and demographics of students in ADA, to make up most of a school district's Tier One entitlement under the Foundation School Program.

For the 2019-2020 State fiscal year, the Basic Allotment for school districts with a Tier One Tax Rate equal to \$0.93, is \$6,160 for each student in ADA and is revised downward for school districts with a Tier One Tax Rate lower than \$0.93. For the State fiscal year ending in 2021 and subsequent State fiscal years, the Basic Allotment for a school district with a Tier One Tax Rate equal to the school district's MCR, is \$6,160 (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) for each student in ADA and is revised downward for a school district with a Tier One Tax Rate lower than the school district's MCR. The Basic Allotment is then supplemented for all school districts by various weights to account for differences among school districts and their student populations. Such additional allotments include, but are not limited to, increased funds for students in ADA who: (i) attend a qualified special education program, (ii) are diagnosed with dyslexia or a related disorder, (iii) are economically disadvantaged, or (iv) have limited English language proficiency. Additional allotments to mitigate differences among school districts include, but are not limited to: (i) a transportation allotment for mileage associated with transporting students who reside two miles or more from their home campus, (ii) a fast growth allotment (for school districts in the top 25% of enrollment growth relative to other school districts), and (iii) a college, career and military readiness allotment to further Texas' goal of increasing the number of students who attain a post-secondary education or workforce credential, and (iv) a teacher incentive allotment to increase teacher compensation retention in disadvantaged or rural school districts. A school district's total Tier One funding, divided by \$6,160, is a school district's measure of students in "Weighted Average Daily Attendance" ("WADA"), which serves to calculate Tier Two funding.

Tier Two. Tier Two supplements Tier One funding and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., Golden Pennies and Copper Pennies) depending on the school district's Enrichment Tax Rate. Golden Pennies generate a guaranteed yield equal to the greater of (i) the local revenue per student in WADA per cent of tax effort available to a school district at the ninety-sixth (96th) percentile of wealth per student in WADA, or (ii) the Basic Allotment (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) multiplied by 0.016. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, school districts are guaranteed a yield of \$98.56 per student in WADA for each Golden Penny levied. Copper Pennies generate a guaranteed yield per student in WADA equal to the school district's Basic Allotment (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) multiplied by 0.008. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, school districts are guaranteed a yield of \$49.28 per student in WADA for each Copper Penny levied. For any school year in which the guaranteed yield of Copper Pennies per student in WADA exceeds the guaranteed yield of Copper Pennies per student in WADA for the preceding school year, a school district is required to reduce its Copper Pennies levied so as to generate no more revenue per student in WADA than was available to the school district for the preceding year. Accordingly, the increase in the guaranteed yield from \$31.95 per Copper Penny per student in WADA for the 2018-2019 school year to \$49.28 per Copper Penny per student in WADA for the 2019-2020 school year requires school districts to compress their levy of Copper Pennies by a factor of 0.64834. As such, school districts that levied

an Enrichment Tax Rate of \$0.17 in school year 2018-2019 must reduce their Enrichment Tax Rate to approximately \$0.138 per \$100 taxable value for the 2019-2020 school year.

Existing Debt Allotment, Instruction Facilities Allotment, and New Instructional Facilities Allotment. The Foundation School Program also includes facilities funding components consisting of the IFA and the EDA, subject to legislative appropriation each State fiscal biennium. To the extent funded for a biennium, these programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a school district's I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the "IFA Yield") in State and local funds for each cent of I&S tax levied to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The IFA Yield has been \$35 since this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where new IFA awards are available, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the TEA before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA State assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a school district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the school district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) \$100,000 or (b) \$250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a school district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, the State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded.

State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") is the lesser of (i) \$40 per student in ADA or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of \$60 million more than the EDA to which school districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were \$35. The portion of a school district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first \$0.29 of its I&S tax rate (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the State Legislature). In general, a school district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the school district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the school district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A school district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the school district receives IFA funding.

Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the State Legislature for the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service payments during the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium on new bonds issued by school districts in the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

A school district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to school districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. In the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$100,000,000 for each fiscal year of the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium for NIFA allotments.

Tax Rate and Funding Equity. The Commissioner may adjust a school district's funding entitlement if the funding formulas used to determine the school district's entitlement result in an unanticipated loss or gain for a school district. Any such adjustment requires preliminary approval from the Legislative Budget Board and the office of the Governor, and such adjustments may only be made through the 2020-2021 school year.

Additionally, the Commissioner may proportionally reduce the amount of funding a school district receives under the Foundation School Program and the ADA calculation if the school district operates on a calendar that provides less than the State-mandated minimum instruction time in a school year. The Commissioner may also adjust a school district's ADA as it relates to State funding where disaster, flood, extreme weather or other calamity has a significant effect on a school district's attendance.

Furthermore, "property-wealthy" school districts that received additional State funds under the public school finance system prior to the enactment of the 2019 Legislation are entitled to an equalized wealth transition grant on an annual basis through the 2023-2024 school year in an amount equal to the amount of additional revenue such school district would have received under former Texas Education Code Sections 41.002(e) through (g), as those sections existed on January 1, 2019. This grant is phased out through the 2023-2024 school year as follows: (1) 20% reduction for the 2020-2021 school year, (2) 40% reduction for the 2021-2022 school year, (3) 60% reduction for the 2022-2023 school year, and (4) 80% reduction for the 2023-2024 school year.

## Local Revenue Level in Excess of Entitlement

A school district that has sufficient property wealth per student in ADA to generate local revenues on the school district's Tier One Tax Rate and Copper Pennies in excess of the school district's respective funding entitlements (a "Chapter 49 school district"), is subject to the local revenue reduction provisions contained in Chapter 49 of Texas Education Code, as amended ("Chapter 49"). Additionally, in years in which the amount of State funds appropriated specifically excludes the amount necessary to provide the guaranteed yield for Golden Pennies, local revenues generated on a school district's Golden Pennies in excess of the school district's respective funding entitlement are subject to the local revenue reduction provisions of Chapter 49. To reduce local revenue in excess of entitlement, Chapter 49 school districts are generally subject to a process known as "recapture," which requires a Chapter 49 school district to exercise certain options to remit local M&O tax revenues collected in excess of the Chapter 49 school district's funding entitlements to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or otherwise expending the respective M&O tax revenues for the benefit of students in school districts that are not Chapter 49 school districts, as described in the subcaption "Options for Local Revenue Levels in Excess of Entitlement." Chapter 49 school districts receive their allocable share of funds distributed from the constitutionally-prescribed Available School Fund, but are generally not eligible to receive State aid under the Foundation School Program, although they may continue to receive State funds for certain competitive grants and certain programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program.

Whereas prior to the 2019 Legislation, the recapture process had been based on the proportion of a school district's assessed property value per student in ADA, now the amount of excess revenues of a Chapter 49 district is determined measured by the "local revenue level" (being the M&O tax revenues generated in a school district) in excess of the entitlements appropriated by the State Legislature each fiscal biennium. Therefore, school districts are now guaranteed that recapture will not reduce revenue below their statutory entitlement. The changes to the wealth transfer provisions are expected to reduce the cumulative amount of recapture payments paid by school districts by approximately \$3.6 billion during the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium.

Options for Local Revenue Levels in Excess of Entitlement. Under Chapter 49, a school district has six (6) options to reduce local revenues to a level that does not exceed the school district's respective entitlements: (1) a school district may consolidate by agreement with one or more school districts to form a consolidated school district; all property and debt of the consolidating school districts vest in the consolidated school district; (2) a school district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor school district; (3) a school district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a school district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor school district by sending money directly to one or more property-poor school districts; (5) a school district may execute an agreement to provide students of one or more other school districts with career and technology education through a program designated as an area program for career and technology education; or (6) a school district may consolidate by agreement with one or more school districts to form a consolidated taxing school district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 49 school district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (6) require prior approval by the Chapter 49 school district's voters.

Furthermore, a school district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective local revenue level is at or below the level that would produce its guaranteed entitlement under the Foundation School Program. If a school district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the school district's local revenue level to the level that would produce the school district's guaranteed entitlement, by detaching certain types of property from the school district and annexing the property to a property-poor school district or, if necessary, consolidate the school district with a property-poor school district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring school district's existing debt.

## THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT

For the 2020-2021 school year, the District was not designated as an "excess local revenue" Chapter 49 school district by TEA. Accordingly, the District has not been required to exercise one of the permitted wealth equalization options.

A district's "excess local revenue" must be tested for each future school year and, if it exceeds the maximum permitted level, the District must reduce its wealth per student by the exercise of one of the permitted wealth equalization options. Accordingly, if the District's wealth per student should exceed the maximum permitted value in future school years, it may be required each year to exercise one or more of the wealth reduction options. If the District were to consolidate (or consolidate its tax base for all purposes) with a property-poor district, the outstanding debt of each district could become payable from the consolidated district's combined property tax base, and the District's ratio of taxable property to debt could become diluted. If the District were to detach property voluntarily, a portion of its outstanding debt (including the Bonds) could be assumed by the district to which the property is annexed, in which case timely payment of the Bonds could become dependent in part on the financial performance of the annexing district.

For a detailed discussion of State funding for school districts, see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - State Funding for School Districts" herein.

## TAX RATE LIMITATIONS

### M&O Tax Rate Limitations

A school district is authorized to levy maintenance and operations (“M&O”) taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the succeeding paragraphs. The District has been unable to locate the records of the election held within the District to authorize the maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed taxable valuation that may be levied upon the taxpayers therein.

HB3 established the following maximum M&O tax rate per \$100 of taxable value that may be adopted by independent school districts, such as the District, for the 2019 and subsequent tax years:

For the 2020 and subsequent tax years, the maximum M&O tax rate per \$100 of taxable value that may be adopted by an independent school district is the sum of \$0.17 and the school district’s MCR. The District’s MCR is, generally, inversely proportional to the change in taxable property values both within the District and the State, and is subject to recalculation annually. For any year, the highest possible MCR for an independent school district is \$0.93.

Furthermore, a school district cannot annually increase its tax rate in excess of the school district’s Voter-Approval Tax Rate without submitting such tax rate to an election and a majority of the voters voting at such Voter-Approval Tax Rate Election (“VATRE”) approving the adopted rate. See “TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate” herein.

### I&S Tax Rate Limitations

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of one or more propositions submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness. See “THE BONDS – Security and Source of Payment” herein.

Section 45.0031 of the Texas Education Code, as amended, requires a school district to demonstrate to the Attorney General of the State of Texas that it has the prospective ability to pay its maximum annual debt service on a proposed issue of bonds and all previously issued bonds, other than bonds approved by voters of a school district at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds, collectively, “exempt bonds”), from a tax levied at a rate of \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued (the “50-cent Test”). In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of \$0.50, a school district may take into account EDA and IFA allotments to the school district, which effectively reduces the school district’s local share of debt service, and may also take into account Tier One funds allotted to the school district. If a school district exercises this option, it may not adopt an I&S tax until it has credited to the school district’s I&S fund an amount equal to all State allotments provided solely for payment of debt service and any Tier One funds needed to demonstrate compliance with the threshold tax rate test and which is received or to be received in that year. Additionally, a school district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the 50-cent Test by applying the \$0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the school district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five (5) years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a school district uses projected future taxable values to meet the 50-cent Test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than \$0.50 per \$100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the school district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the 50-cent Test from a tax rate of \$0.45 per \$100 of valuation. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a school district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. The Bonds are issued as “new money bonds” and are subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test. The District has not utilized projected values or State assistance to satisfy the 50-cent Test.

### Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate

A school district’s total tax rate is the combination of the M&O tax rate and the I&S tax rate. Generally, the highest rate at which a school district may levy taxes for any given year without holding an election to approve the tax rate is the “Voter-Approval Tax Rate,” as described below.

A school district is required to adopt its annual tax rate before the later of September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, except that a tax rate that exceeds the Voter-Approval Tax Rate must be adopted not later than the seventy-first (71st) day before the next occurring November uniform election date. A school district’s failure to adopt a tax rate equal to or less than the Voter-Approval Tax Rate by

September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after receipt of the certified appraisal roll, will result in the tax rate for such school district for the tax year to be the lower of the “no-new-revenue tax rate” calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the school district for the preceding tax year. A school district’s failure to adopt a tax rate in excess of the Voter-Approval Tax Rate on or prior to the seventy-first (71st) day before the next occurring November uniform election date, will result in the school district adopting a tax rate equal to or less than its Voter-Approval Tax Rate by the later of September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after receipt of the certified appraisal roll. “No-new-revenue tax rate” means the rate that will produce the prior year’s total tax levy from the current year’s total taxable values, adjusted such that lost values are not included in the calculation of the prior year’s taxable values and new values are not included in the current year’s taxable values.

The Voter-Approval Tax Rate for a school district is the sum of (i) the school district’s MCR; (ii) the greater of (a) the school district’s Enrichment Tax Rate for the preceding year, less any amount by which the school district is required to reduce its current year Enrichment Tax Rate pursuant to Section 48.202(f), Education Code, as amended, or (b) the rate of \$0.05 per \$100 of taxable value; and (iii) the school district’s current I&S tax rate. However, for only the 2020 tax year, if the governing body of the school district does not adopt by unanimous vote an M&O tax rate at least equal to the sum of the school district’s MCR plus \$0.05, then \$0.04 is substituted for \$0.05 in the calculation for such school district’s Voter-Approval Tax Rate for the 2020 tax year. For the 2020 tax year, and subsequent years, a school district’s M&O tax rate may not exceed the rate equal to the sum of (i) \$0.17 and (ii) the school district’s MCR. See “CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM” herein, for more information regarding the State Compression Percentage, MCR, and the Enrichment Tax Rate.

The governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the school district’s Voter-Approval Tax Rate without approval by a majority of the voters approving the higher rate at an election to be held on the next uniform election date. Further, subject to certain exceptions for areas declared disaster areas, State law requires the board of trustees of a school district to conduct an efficiency audit before seeking voter approval to adopt a tax rate exceeding the Voter-Approval Tax Rate and sets certain parameters for conducting and disclosing the results of such efficiency audit. An election is not required for a tax increase to address increased expenditures resulting from certain natural disasters in the year following the year in which such disaster occurs; however, the amount by which the increased tax rate exceeds the school district’s Voter-Approval Tax Rate for such year may not be considered by the school district in the calculation of its subsequent Voter-Approval Tax Rate.

The calculation of the Voter-Approval Tax Rate does not limit or impact the District’s ability to set an I&S tax rate in each year sufficient to pay debt service on all of the District’s tax-supported debt obligations, including the Bonds.

Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss the school district’s budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the school district if the school district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Sections 44.004(b), (c), (c-1), (c-2), and (d), and, if applicable, subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the school district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. A school district that elects to adopt a tax rate before the adoption of a budget for the fiscal year that begins in the current tax year may adopt a tax rate for the current tax year before receipt of the certified appraisal roll, so long as the chief appraiser of the appraisal district in which the school district participates has certified to the assessor for the school district an estimate of the taxable value of property in the school district. If a school district adopts its tax rate prior to the adoption of its budget, both the no-new-revenue tax rate and the Voter-Approval Tax Rate of the school district shall be calculated based on the school district’s certified estimate of taxable value. A school district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

A school district must annually calculate and prominently post on its internet website, and submit to the county tax assessor-collector for each county in which all or part of the school district is located its Voter-Approval Tax Rate in accordance with forms prescribed by the State Comptroller of Public Accounts.

## **DEBT LIMITATIONS**

Under State law, there is no explicit bonded indebtedness limitation, although the tax rate limits described above under “TAX RATE LIMITATIONS” effectively impose a limit on the incurrence of debt. Such tax rate limits require school districts to demonstrate the ability to pay “new debt” from a tax rate of \$0.50. In demonstrating compliance with the requirement, a district may take into account State equalization payments and, if compliance with such requirement is contingent on receiving state assistance, a district may not adopt a tax rate for a year for purposes of paying the principal of and interest on the bonds unless the district credits to the interest and sinking fund for the bonds the amount of State assistance received or to be received in that year. The Attorney General of the State reviews a district’s

calculations showing the compliance with such test as a condition to the legal approval of the debt. As stated above, the Bonds are issued as new debt and subject to this limitation.

## **EMPLOYEE BENEFITS, RETIREMENT PLAN AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS**

The District contributes to the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (the "System"), a public employee retirement system. It is a cost-sharing, multiple-employer defined benefit pension plan with one exception: all risks and costs are not shared by the District but are the liability of the State of Texas. The System provides service retirement and disability retirement benefits, and death benefits to plan members and beneficiaries. The System operates primarily under the provisions of the Texas Constitution and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. See "Notes to the Financial Statements – I. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies "Pensions" and Exhibit G as set out in the audited financial statements of the District for the year ended August 31, 2020, as set forth in APPENDIX B hereto.

The District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program ("TRS-Care"), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit post-employment health care plan administered by the TRS. TRS-Care provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under TRS. See "Notes to the Financial Statements – I. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies "Other Post-Employment Benefits (OPEB)" and Exhibit G as set out in the audited financial statements of the District for the year ended August 31, 2020, as set forth in APPENDIX B hereto.

In June 2012, the Government Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") issued Statement No. 68 *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions*, which was later amended by GASB Statement No. 71 *Pension Transition for Contributions Made Subsequent to the Measurement Date*, each in an effort to improve accounting and financial reporting by state and local governments related to pensions. GASB Statement No. 68 requires reporting entities, such as the District, to recognize their proportionate share of the net pension liability and operating statement activity related to changes in collective pension liability. Reporting entities, such as the District, that contribute to the TRS pension plan will report a liability on the face of their government-wide financial statements. Such reporting began with the District's fiscal year ending August 31, 2015. See "CHANGE IN NET ASSETS" in APPENDIX B herein. GASB Statement No. 68 applies only to pension benefits and does not apply to OPEB or TRS-Care related liabilities. At the conclusion of the 2019-2020 fiscal year, the District had a net pension liability of \$406,553.

See the audited financial statements of the District for the year ended August 31, 2020 as set forth in APPENDIX B hereto for information related to the District's adoption of Statement No. 75, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions and the related prior period adjustment.

Formal collective bargaining agreements relating directly to wages and other conditions of employment are prohibited by State law, as are strikes by teachers. There are various local, state and national organized employee groups who engage in efforts to better terms and conditions of employment of school employees. Some districts have adopted a policy to consult with employer groups with respect to certain terms and conditions of employment. Some examples of these groups are the Texas State Teachers Association, the Texas Classroom Teachers Association, the Association of Texas Professional Educators and the National Education Association.

## **INVESTMENT POLICIES**

The District invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board. Both Texas law and the District's investment policies are subject to change.

### **Legal Investments**

Available District funds are invested as authorized by State law and in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board.

Under State law, the District is authorized to make investments meeting the requirements of the PFIA, which currently include (1) obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, including the Federal Home Loan Banks; (2) direct obligations of the State or its agencies and instrumentalities; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States; (4) other obligations, the principal and interest of which is guaranteed or insured by or backed by the full faith and credit of, the State or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities, including obligations that are fully guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or by the explicit full faith and credit of the United States; (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "A" or its equivalent; (6) bonds issued, assumed or guaranteed by the State of Israel; (7) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or its successor, or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or its successor; (8) interest-bearing



banking deposits other than those described by clause (7) if (A) the funds invested in the banking deposits are invested through: (i) a broker with a main office or branch office in this State that the District selects from a list the governing body or designated investment committee of the District adopts as required by Section 2256.025, Texas Government Code; or (ii) a depository institution with a main office or branch office in the State that the District selects; (B) the broker or depository institution selected as described by (A) above arranges for the deposit of the funds in the banking deposits in one or more federally insured depository institutions, regardless of where located, for the District's account; (C) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of the banking deposits is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States; and (D) the District appoints as the District's custodian of the banking deposits issued for the District's account: (i) the depository institution selected as described by (A) above; (ii) an entity described by Section 2257.041(d), Texas Government Code; or (iii) a clearing broker dealer registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC") and operating under SEC Rule 15c3-3; (9) (i) certificates of deposit or share certificates meeting the requirements of the Public Funds Investment Act (Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code) (the "PFIA") that are issued by an institution that has its main office or a branch office in the State and are guaranteed or insured by the FDIC or the NCUSIF, or their respective successors, or are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) or in any other manner and provided for by law for District deposits, or (ii) certificates of deposits where (a) the funds are invested by the District through (A) a broker that has its main office or a branch office in the State and is selected from a list adopted by the District as required by law, or (B) a depository institution that has its main office or branch office in the State that is selected by the District, (b) the broker or the depository institution selected by the District arranges for the deposit of the funds in certificates of deposit in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District, (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States, and (d) the District appoints the depository institution selected under (a) above, a custodian as described by Section 2257.041(d) of the Texas Government Code, or a clearing broker-dealer registered with the SEC and operating pursuant to SEC Rule 15c3-3 (17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c3-3) as custodian for the District with respect to the certificates of deposit; (10) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that have a defined termination date, are secured by a combination of cash and obligations described in clause (1) above, clause (12) below, require the securities being purchased by the District or cash held by the District to be pledged to the District, held in the District's name, and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and are placed through a primary government securities dealer, as defined by the Federal Reserve, or a financial institution doing business in the State; (11) certain bankers' acceptances with the remaining term of 270 days or fewer, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its parent are rated at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency; (12) commercial paper with a stated maturity of 365 days or fewer that is rated at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by either (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank; (13) no-load money market mutual funds registered with and regulated by the United States SEC that provide the District with a prospectus and other information required by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or the Investment Company Act of 1940 and that comply with federal SEC Rule 2a-7 (17 C.F.R. Section 270.2a-7), promulgated under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80a-1 et seq.); and (14) no-load mutual funds registered with the SEC that have an average weighted maturity of less than two years, and either (a) a duration of one year or more and invest exclusively in obligations described in under this heading, or (b) a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities. In addition, bond proceeds may be invested in guaranteed investment contracts that have a defined termination date and are secured by obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, other than the prohibited obligations described below, in an amount at least equal to the amount of bond proceeds invested under such contract and are pledged to the District and deposited with the District or a third party selected and approved by the District.

The District may invest in such obligations directly or through government investment pools that invest solely in such obligations provided that the pools are rated no lower than "AAA" or "AAA<sub>m</sub>" or an equivalent by at least one nationally recognized rating service. The District may also contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term up to two years, but the District retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the District must do so by order, ordinance, or resolution. The District is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a stated final maturity of greater than ten (10) years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

Political subdivisions such as the District are authorized to implement securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (8) above, (b) irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than "A" or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) above, clauses (12) through (14) above, or an authorized investment pool; (ii) securities held

as collateral under a loan are pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or a third party designated by the District; (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State; and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less.

Under State law, the District is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that include a list of authorized investments for District funds, the maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment, the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups, methods to monitor the market price of investments acquired with public funds, a requirement for settlement of all transactions, except investment pool funds and mutual funds, on a delivery versus payment basis, and procedures to monitor rating changes in investments acquired with public funds and the liquidation of such investments consistent with the PFIA. All District funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

Under State law, the District's investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived." At least quarterly the District's investment officers must submit an investment report to the District's [Board of Trustees] detailing: (1) the investment position of the District, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, the ending market value and the fully accrued interest for the reporting period of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) adopted investment strategies and (b) State law. No person may invest District funds without express written authority from the District's Board of Trustees.

Under State law, the District is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies; (2) adopt by written instrument a rule, order, ordinance or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the respective rule, order, ordinance or resolution; (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the District to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Board; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the District to: (a) receive and review the District's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the District and the business organization that are not authorized by the District's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the entity's entire portfolio, requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards or relates to investment transactions of the entity that are not made through accounts or other contractual arrangements over which the business organization has accepted discretionary investment authority), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the District and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) in conjunction with its annual financial audit, perform a compliance audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the District's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, chief financial officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in no-load mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the District's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements; and (10) at least annually review, revise and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the District.

## **LEGAL MATTERS**

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, who will deliver its opinion, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approval of certain legal matters by Co-Bond Counsel, which will deliver its opinion to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District. Special Tax Counsel will deliver its opinion regarding interest on the Bonds being excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103(a) of the Code and other matters as set forth under "TAX MATTERS" herein, attached hereto as APPENDIX D – FORM OF SPECIAL TAX COUNSEL'S OPINION. The legal fee to be paid to Co-Bond Counsel and Special Tax Counsel is contingent upon the sale and delivery of the Bonds. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriter by its counsel, Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas. The legal fee

to be paid to counsel to the Underwriter for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is contingent upon the sale and delivery of the Bonds.

Co-Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part, in the preparation of the Official Statement, and such firms have not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained therein, except that, in their capacity as Co-Bond Counsel, such firms have reviewed the information under the captions "THE BONDS" (exclusive of the subcaptions "Payment Record," "Future Issues," "Permanent School Fund Guarantee," and "Default and Remedies," as to which no opinion is expressed), "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS," "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM," "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS," "LEGAL MATTERS" (excluding the information under the subcaption "Litigation," as to which no opinion is expressed), "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE" (excluding the information under the subcaption "Compliance with Prior Agreements," as to which no opinion is expressed), "LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS," and "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION – Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale" in the Official Statement and such firms are of the opinion that the information relating to the Bonds and the legal issues contained under such captions and subcaptions is an accurate description of the laws and legal issues addressed therein and, with respect to the Bonds, such information conforms to the Bond Order. Special Tax Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part, in the preparation of the Official Statement, and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained herein, except that, in its capacity as Special Tax Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information under the caption "TAX MATTERS" in the Official Statement and such firm is of the opinion that the information relating to the Bonds and the legal issues contained under such caption is an accurate description of the laws and legal issues addressed therein and, with respect to the Bonds, such information conforms to the Bond Order.

Though it represents the Municipal Advisor and the Underwriter from time to time in matters unrelated to the Bonds, Co-Bond Counsel have been engaged by and only represent the District with respect to the issuance of the Bonds. The legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds expresses the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues expressly addressed therein. In rendering legal opinions, the attorneys do not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of such opinions guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise from the transaction.

### **Litigation**

One or more officials of the District will certify that, except as disclosed in this Official Statement, there is no litigation or other proceeding pending against or, to their knowledge, threatened against the District in any court, agency, or administrative body (either state or federal) wherein an adverse decision would materially adversely affect the financial condition of the District.

At the time of the initial delivery of the Bonds, the District will provide the Underwriter with a certificate to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending challenging the issuance of the Bonds or that affects the payment and security of the Bonds or in any other manner questioning the issuance, sale, or delivery of the Bonds.

## **TAX MATTERS**

### **Tax Exemption**

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the opinion of Special Tax Counsel to the effect that interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes (1) is excludable from gross income, as defined in Section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the "Code"), of the owners thereof pursuant to Section 103 of the Code and existing regulations, published rulings, and court decisions, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. The statutes, regulations, rulings, and court decisions on which such opinion is based are subject to change. A form of Special Tax Counsel's opinion appears in APPENDIX D hereto.

In rendering the foregoing opinions, Special Tax Counsel will rely upon representations and certifications of the District made in certificates pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds and will assume continuing compliance by the District with the provisions of the Order subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds. The Order contains covenants by the District with respect to, among other matters, the use of the proceeds of the Bonds and the facilities financed therewith by persons other than state or local governmental units, the manner in which the proceeds of the Bonds are to be invested, the periodic calculation and payment to the United States Department of the Treasury (the "Treasury") of arbitrage "profits" from the investment of the proceeds, and the reporting of certain information to the Treasury. Failure to comply with any of these covenants may cause interest on the Bonds to be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof from the date of the issuance of the Bonds.

Except as described above, Special Tax Counsel will express no other opinion with respect to any other federal, state or local tax consequences under present law, or proposed legislation, resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest

on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds. Special Tax Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result, but represents its legal judgment based upon its review of existing statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions and the representations and covenants of the District described above. No ruling has been sought from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") with respect to the matters addressed in the opinion of Special Tax Counsel, and Special Tax Counsel's opinion is not binding on the IRS. The IRS has an ongoing program of auditing the tax-exempt status of the interest on municipal obligations. If an audit of the Bonds is commenced, under current procedures the IRS is likely to treat the District as the "taxpayer," and the owners of the Bonds would have no right to participate in the audit process. In responding to or defending an audit of the tax-exempt status of the interest on the Bonds, the District may have different or conflicting interests from the owners of the Bonds. Public awareness of any audit of the Bonds could adversely affect the value and liquidity of the Bonds during the pendency of the audit, regardless of its ultimate outcome.

### **Tax Changes**

Existing law may change to reduce or eliminate the benefit to bondholders of the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Any proposed legislation or administrative action, whether or not taken, could also affect the value and marketability of the Bonds. It is uncertain whether this legislation will be enacted and, if so, whether it will be enacted in its current form. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to any proposed or future changes in tax law.

### **Ancillary Tax Consequences**

Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should be aware that the ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust ("FASIT"), individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Prospective purchasers should consult their own tax advisors as to the applicability of these consequences to their particular circumstances.

### **Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount Bonds**

The initial public offering price to be paid for certain Bonds may be less than the amount payable on such Bonds at maturity (the "Discount Bonds"). An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Discount Bond (assuming that a substantial amount of the Discount Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and the amount payable at maturity constitutes original issue discount to the initial purchaser of such Discount Bonds. A portion of such original issue discount, allocable to the holding period of a Discount Bond by the initial purchaser, will be treated as interest for federal income tax purposes, excludable from gross income on the same terms and conditions as those for other interest on the Bonds. Such interest is considered to be accrued actuarially in accordance with the constant interest method over the life of a Discount Bond, taking into account the semiannual compounding of accrued interest, at the yield to maturity on such Discount Bond and generally will be allocated to an initial purchaser in a different amount from the amount of the payment denominated as interest actually received by the initial purchaser during his taxable year.

However, such accrued interest may be required to be taken into account in determining the amount of the branch profits tax applicable to certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment. In addition, the accrual of such interest may result in certain other collateral federal income tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a FASIT, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

In the event of the redemption, sale or other taxable disposition of a Discount Bond prior to maturity, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Discount Bond in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Discount Bond was held) is includable in gross income.

Owners of Discount Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination for federal income tax purposes of accrued interest upon disposition of Discount Bonds and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Discount Bonds. It is possible that, under applicable provisions governing determination of state and local income taxes, accrued interest on the Discount Bonds may be deemed to be received in the year of accrual even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment.

## **Tax Accounting Treatment of Premium Bonds**

The initial public offering price to be paid for certain Bonds may be greater than the stated redemption price amount payable on such Bonds at maturity (the "Premium Bonds"). An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Premium Bond (assuming that a substantial amount of the Premium Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and its stated redemption price at maturity constitutes premium to the initial purchaser of such Premium Bonds. The basis for federal income tax purposes of a Premium Bond in the hands of such initial purchaser must be reduced each year by the amortizable bond premium, although no federal income tax deduction is allowed as a result of such reduction in basis for amortizable bond premium with respect to the Premium Bonds. Such reduction in basis will increase the amount of any gain (or decrease the amount of any loss) to be recognized for federal income tax purposes upon a sale or other taxable disposition of a Premium Bond. The amount of premium which is amortizable each year by an initial purchaser is determined by using such purchaser's yield to maturity.

Purchasers of the Premium Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of amortizable bond premium on Premium Bonds for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Premium Bonds.

## **Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations**

Section 265 of the Code provides, in general, that interest expense to acquire or carry tax-exempt obligations is not deductible from the gross income of the owner of such obligations. In addition, Section 265 of the Code generally disallows 100% of any deduction for interest expense which is incurred by "financial institutions" described in such section and is allocable, as computed in such section, to tax-exempt interest on obligations acquired after August 7, 1986. Section 265(b) of the Code provides an exemption to this interest disallowance rule for financial institutions stating that such disallowance does not apply to interest expense allocable to certain tax-exempt obligations (other than private activity bonds that are not qualified 501(c)(3) bonds) which are properly designated by an issuer as "qualified tax-exempt obligations." An issuer may designate obligations as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" only if the amount of the issue of which they are a part, when added to the amount of certain other tax-exempt obligations (other than private activity bonds that are not qualified 501(c)(3) obligations other than certain current refunding bonds) issued or reasonably anticipated to be issued by the issuer and certain related entities during the same calendar year, does not exceed \$10,000,000.

The District has designated the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" and will certify its expectation that the above-described \$10,000,000 ceiling will not be exceeded. Accordingly, it is anticipated that financial institutions which purchase the Bonds will not be subject to the 100% disallowance of interest expense allocable to interest on the Bonds under Section 265(b) of the Code. However, the deduction for interest expense incurred by a financial institution which is allocable to the interest on the Bonds will be reduced by 20% pursuant to Section 291 of the Code.

## **LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS**

Under the Texas Public Security Procedures Act (Texas Government Code, Chapter 1201, as amended), the Bonds (i) are negotiable instruments, (ii) are investment securities to which Chapter 8 of the Texas Uniform Commercial Code applies, and (iii) are legal and authorized investments for (A) an insurance company, (B) a fiduciary or trustee, or (C) a sinking fund of a municipality or other political subdivision or public agency of the State of Texas. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies and political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value. For political subdivisions in Texas which have adopted investment policies and guidelines in accordance with the Public Funds Investment Act (Texas Government Code, Chapter 2256, as amended), the Bonds may have to be assigned a rating of at least "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency before such obligations are eligible investments for sinking funds and other public funds. See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION – Municipal Bond Rating" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital and savings and loan associations.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

## **CONTINUING DISCLOSURE**

The offering of the Bonds qualifies for the Rule 15c2-12(d)(2) exemption from the District's continuing disclosure obligation, because the District does not currently have outstanding more than \$10,000,000 in aggregate amount of outstanding municipal securities (excluding securities offered in transactions that were exempt from the Rule 15c2-12)

and no person is committed by contract or other arrangement with respect to payment of the Bonds. Pursuant to the exemption, in the Bond Order, the District will make the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person" with respect to the Bonds, within the meaning of the Securities and Exchange Commission's Rule 15c2-12. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified material events, to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (the "MSRB")."

### **Annual Reports**

The District will provide in an electronic format as prescribed by the MSRB certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB annually. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in this Official Statement that is customarily prepared by the District and publicly available, which currently consists of an annual audited financial statement. The District will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The District may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information will include audited financial statements, if the District commissions an audit and it is completed by the required time. If audited financial statements are not available by the required time, the District will provide unaudited financial statements by the required time and audited financial statements when and if such audited financial statements become available. Any such financial statements will be prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in APPENDIX B or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation.

The District's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, it must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the District changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will file notice of the change (and of the date of the new fiscal year end) with the MSRB prior to the next date by which the District otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data as set forth above.

All financial information, operating data, financial statements and notices required to be provided to the MSRB shall be provided in an electronic format and be accompanied by identifying information prescribed by the MSRB. Financial information and operating data to be provided as set forth above may be set forth in full in one or more documents or may be included by specific reference to any document (including an official statement or other offering document) available to the public on the MSRB's Internet Web site or filed with the SEC, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12.

### **Notice of Certain Events**

The District will file with the MSRB notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds in a timely manner (not more than ten (10) business days after occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) appointment of a successor or additional Paying Agent/Registrar or the change of name of a Paying Agent/Registrar, if material; (15) incurrence of a financial obligation of the District (as defined by Rule 15c2-12, which includes certain debt, debt-like, and debt-related obligations), if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of any such financial obligation of the District, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of any such financial obligation of the District, any of which reflect financial difficulties.

Neither the Bonds nor the Bond Order make any provision for debt service reserves, credit enhancement (with the exception of the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee), or liquidity enhancement. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports." The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB.

For these purposes, any event described in clause (12) in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur; the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a

proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District.

### **Limitations and Amendments**

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of specified events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders or beneficial owners of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if (1) the agreement, as amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Bonds in the offering described herein in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent or (b) any person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District may also repeal or amend these provisions if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provisions of Rule 15c2-12 or any court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of Rule 15c2-12 are invalid, but in either case only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds giving effect to (a) such provisions as so amended and (b) any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12. If the District amends its agreement, it must include with the next financial information and operating data provided in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and data provided.

### **Compliance with Prior Agreements**

The District has not previously entered into a continuing disclosure agreement pursuant to Rule 15c2-12.

## **OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION**

### **Authenticity of Financial Information**

The financial data and other information contained herein have been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources, which are believed to be reliable. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and orders contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents and orders. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such documents for further information. Reference is made to original documents in all respects.

### **Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale**

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities act of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Underwriter to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The District agrees to cooperate, at the Underwriter's written request and sole expense, in registering or qualifying the Bonds or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where

such action is necessary; provided, however, that the District shall not be required to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general or special consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

### **Municipal Bond Rating**

The Bonds are rated “AAA” by S&P Global Ratings, Inc. (“S&P”) by virtue of the guarantee of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. The presently outstanding debt of the District, including the Bonds, is rated “A” by S&P without regard to credit enhancement.

An explanation of the significance of any rating may be obtained from the company furnishing the rating. The rating reflects only the view of such organization and the District makes no representation as to the appropriateness of the rating. There is no assurance that such rating will continue for any given period of time or that it will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by such rating company, if in the judgment of such company, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of such rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

### **Municipal Advisor**

Live Oak Public Finance, LLC (the “Municipal Advisor”) is employed as the Municipal Advisor to the District in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. The Municipal Advisor’s fee for services rendered with respect to the sale of the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and delivery of the Bonds. Live Oak Public Finance, LLC, in its capacity as Municipal Advisor, has relied on the opinions of Co-Bond Counsel and Special Tax Counsel and has not verified and does not assume any responsibility for the information, covenants, and representations contained in any of the bond documentation with respect to the federal income tax status of the Bonds.

The Municipal Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Municipal Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Municipal Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

### **Underwriting**

The Underwriter has agreed, subject to certain conditions, to purchase the Bonds from the District at the price equal to the initial offering prices to the public, as shown on page -ii- herein, less an Underwriter’s discount of \$55,046.23. The Underwriter’s obligation is subject to certain conditions precedent. The Underwriter will be obligated to purchase all of the Bonds, if any of the Bonds are purchased. The Bonds may be offered and sold to certain dealers and others at prices lower than such public offering prices, and such public prices may be changed, from time to time, by the Underwriter.

The Underwriter has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriter has reviewed the information in this Official Statement pursuant to its responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws, but the Underwriter does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

The Underwriter and its affiliates are full-service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. Certain of the Underwriter and its affiliates have, from time to time, performed, and may in the future perform, various investment banking services for the District for which they received or will receive customary fees and expenses.

In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the Underwriter and its affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (which may include bank loans and/or credit default swaps) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers and may at any time hold long and short positions in such securities and instruments. Such investment and securities activities may involve securities and instruments of the District.

The Underwriter and its affiliates also may communicate independent investment recommendations, market advice, or trading ideas and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such assets, securities or other financial instruments and at any time may hold, or recommend to clients that they should acquire, long and/or short positions in such assets, securities and other financial instruments.

### **Use of Audited Financial Statements**

Cameron L. Gulley, the District’s independent auditor, has not been engaged to perform and has not performed, since the date of the report included herein, any procedures on the financial statements addressed in that report. Cameron L. Gulley has not performed any procedures relating to this Official Statement.



## Forward-Looking Statements

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

## Information from External Sources

References to web site addresses presented herein are for informational purposes only and may be in the form of a hyperlink solely for the reader's convenience. Unless specified otherwise, such web sites and the information or links contained therein are not incorporated into, and are not part of, this Official Statement for purposes of, and as that term is defined in, SEC Rule 15c2-12.

## Authorization of the Official Statement

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District.

This Official Statement was approved by the Board of the District for distribution in accordance with provisions of the SEC's Rule codified at 17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c2-12, as amended.

The Bond Order approved the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and authorized its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Underwriter.

## THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

/s/ \_\_\_\_\_ Kathy Thorp  
President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:  
/s/ \_\_\_\_\_ Sandra Redwine  
Secretary, Board of Trustees

**APPENDIX A**

**SELECTED FINANCIAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT**

**TABLE 1 - VALUATION, EXEMPTIONS AND TAX SUPPORTED DEBT**

<u>Assessed Valuation and Exemption <sup>(1)</sup></u>	
2021 Market Valuation	\$773,887,982
Less Exemptions and Deductions	(636,500,958)
2021 Tax Year Net Taxable Valuation	<u>\$137,387,024</u>
<u>Tax Supported Debt</u>	
Unlimited Tax Bonds Outstanding	\$ -
Plus: The Bonds	<u>7,675,000</u>
Total Unlimited Tax Bonds	<u>\$7,675,000</u>
Less: Interest and Sinking Fund Balance <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ -
Net General Obligation Debt <sup>(3)</sup>	<u>\$7,675,000</u>
Ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation	5.59%
Estimated District Population <sup>(4)</sup>	707
Per Capita Net Taxable Valuation	\$194,324
Per Capita Net G.O. Debt	\$10,856

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Throckmorton Central Appraisal District.

<sup>(2)</sup> For Fiscal Year 2020/2021 the District did not levy an I&S Tax.

<sup>(3)</sup> Includes the Bonds.

<sup>(4)</sup> Source: The Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

**TABLE 2 - HISTORICAL NET TAXABLE VALUATION <sup>(1)</sup>**

	<u>Tax Year 2021</u>	<u>Tax Year 2020</u>	<u>Tax Year 2019</u>	<u>Tax Year 2018</u>	<u>Tax Year 2017</u>
Gross Value	\$773,887,982	\$791,920,099	\$688,054,420	\$759,271,220	\$677,656,450
Less: Exemptions/Reductions	<u>636,500,958</u>	<u>626,637,440</u>	<u>539,419,870</u>	<u>626,486,840</u>	<u>553,249,140</u>
<b>Net Taxable Value</b>	<b>\$137,387,024</b>	<b>\$165,282,659</b>	<b>\$148,634,550</b>	<b>\$132,784,380</b>	<b>\$124,407,310</b>

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Throckmorton Central Appraisal District.

**TABLE 3 - VALUATION AND TAX SUPPORTED DEBT HISTORY**

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	Estimated Population <sup>(1)</sup>	Taxable Assessed Valuation <sup>(2)</sup>	Taxable Assessed Valuation Per Capita	Total Tax Supported Debt Outstanding	Ratio of Tax Supported Debt to Taxable Evaluation	Tax Supported Debt Per Capita
2018	862	\$124,407,310	\$144,324	-	-	-
2019	717	132,784,380	185,194	-	-	-
2020	811	148,634,550	183,273	-	-	-
2021	857	165,282,659	192,862	-	-	-
2022	707	137,387,024	194,324	7,675,000 <sup>(3)</sup>	5.59% <sup>(3)</sup>	10,856 <sup>(3)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: The Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

<sup>(2)</sup> Source: Throckmorton Central Appraisal District.

<sup>(3)</sup> Includes the Bonds.

**TABLE 4 - TAX RATE, LEVY AND COLLECTION HISTORY <sup>(1)</sup>**

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	Tax Rate	Distribution		Tax Levy	Percent Collections <sup>(3)</sup>	
		General Fund	Interest and Sinking Fund		Current	Total
2017	\$1.0400	\$1.0400	\$0.0000	\$1,310,260	97.89%	99.31%
2018	1.1700	1.1700	0.0000	1,436,663	97.76%	98.63%
2019	1.1700	1.1700	0.0000	1,532,451	98.00%	98.68%
2020	1.0684	1.0684 <sup>(2)</sup>	0.0000	1,572,817	97.72%	98.73%
2021	0.9955	0.9955 <sup>(2)</sup>	0.0000	1,324,138	98.09% <sup>(4)</sup>	101.78% <sup>(4)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Districts Audited Financial Statements.

<sup>(2)</sup> The decline in the District's Maintenance & Operations Tax from the 2018/2019 fiscal year to the 2019/2020 and 2020/21 fiscal years is a function of House Bill 3 adopted by the Texas Legislature in June 2019. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" herein.

<sup>(3)</sup> Excludes penalties and interest.

<sup>(4)</sup> Source: Throckmorton Central Appraisal District. Collections as of August 17, 2021.

**TABLE 5 - TEN LARGEST TAXPAYERS <sup>(1)(2)</sup>**

Name of Taxpayer	Taxpayer Type	2021/2022 Taxable Assessed Valuation	% of Total Taxable Assessed Valuation
Oncor Electric Delivery Co.	Electric Utility/Power Plant	\$28,008,020	20.39%
Ross McKnight	Real Estate	2,859,910	2.08%
Bow Creek Ltd.	Oil & Gas	2,774,510	2.02%
J. A. Matthews	Real Estate	2,148,560	1.56%
Travis CSL	Residential Land	1,033,790	0.75%
Farmland Reserve Inc.	Farmland	990,380	0.72%
Hendrick Ranch Ltd.	Ranch	923,400	0.67%
Swenson Land & Cattle Co.	Ranch	738,060	0.54%
Polk Co. School Land	Commercial Land	723,250	0.53%
Donnell T. Brown	Individual Residence	696,340	0.51%
		<u>\$40,896,220</u>	<u>29.77%</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Throckmorton Central Appraisal District.

<sup>(2)</sup> As shown in the table above, Oncore Electric Delivery Co. accounts for over 20% of the District's tax base. The ten largest taxpayers in the District currently account for over 29% of the District's tax base, with the majority of such property comprised of land and real estate business activities. Adverse developments in economic conditions, especially in the oil and gas industries, could adversely impact the businesses that own such properties (and recent events such as COVID-19 significantly increased the volatility in the market sector, see "INFECTIOUS DISEASE OUTBREAK - COVID-19 herein) in the District and the tax values in the District, resulting in less local tax revenue. If any major taxpayer were to default in the payment of taxes, the ability of the District to make timely payment of debt service on the Bonds will be dependent on its ability to enforce and liquidate its tax lien, which is a time-consuming process, or, perhaps, to sell tax anticipation notes until such amounts could be collected, if ever. See "THE BONDS – Default and Remedies" and "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies" herein.

[Remainder of page intentionally left blank]

**TABLE 6 - ESTIMATED OVERLAPPING DEBT <sup>(1)</sup>**

Expenditures of the various taxing entities within the territory of the District are paid out of ad valorem taxes levied by such entities on properties within the District. Such entities are independent of the District and may incur borrowings to finance their expenditures. This statement of direct and estimated overlapping ad valorem tax bonds ("Tax Debt") was developed from information contained in "Texas Municipal Reports" published by the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. Except for the amounts relating to the District, the District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information, and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete. Furthermore, certain of the entities listed may have issued additional bonds since the date hereof, and such entities may have programs requiring the issuance of substantial amounts of additional bonds, the amount of which cannot be determined. The following table reflects the estimated share of overlapping Tax Debt of the District.

<u>Taxing Jurisdiction</u>	<u>Total Debt</u>	<u>As of</u>	<u>% Overlapping</u>	<u>Overlapping Debt</u>
Throckmorton County	\$0	7/31/2021	73.18%	\$0
Throckmorton, Town of	125,859	7/31/2021	100.00%	125,859
Estimated (Net) Overlapping Debt				<u>\$125,859</u>
Throckmorton Collegiate ISD <sup>(2)</sup>		9/21/2021		<u>\$7,675,000</u>
<b>Total Direct &amp; Estimated Overlapping Debt</b>				<u><u>\$7,800,859</u></u>
Total Direct and Overlapping Debt % of the 2021 Certified Assessed Valuation <sup>(2)</sup>				5.68%
Total Direct and Overlapping Debt Per Capita <sup>(2)</sup>				\$11,034

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: The Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

<sup>(2)</sup> Includes the Bonds.

[Remainder of page intentionally left blank]

**TABLE 7 – TAX-SUPPORTED DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS**

Period Ending 8/31	Outstanding Debt			% of Principal Retired
	Principal	Interest	Total	
2022	\$185,000	\$207,225	\$392,225	0.00%
2023	165,000	224,700	389,700	2.15%
2024	170,000	219,750	389,750	4.36%
2025	175,000	214,650	389,650	6.64%
2026	180,000	209,400	389,400	8.99%
2027	185,000	204,000	389,000	11.40%
2028	190,000	198,450	388,450	13.88%
2029	200,000	192,750	392,750	16.48%
2030	205,000	186,750	391,750	19.15%
2031	210,000	180,600	390,600	21.89%
2032	215,000	174,300	389,300	24.69%
2033	225,000	167,850	392,850	27.62%
2034	230,000	161,100	391,100	30.62%
2035	235,000	154,200	389,200	33.68%
2036	245,000	147,150	392,150	36.87%
2037	250,000	139,800	389,800	40.13%
2038	260,000	132,300	392,300	43.52%
2039	265,000	124,500	389,500	46.97%
2040	275,000	116,550	391,550	50.55%
2041	280,000	108,300	388,300	54.20%
2042	290,000	99,900	389,900	57.98%
2043	300,000	91,200	391,200	61.89%
2044	310,000	82,200	392,200	65.93%
2045	320,000	72,900	392,900	70.10%
2046	325,000	63,300	388,300	74.33%
2047	335,000	53,550	388,550	78.70%
2048	345,000	43,500	388,500	83.19%
2049	355,000	33,150	388,150	87.82%
2050	370,000	22,500	392,500	92.64%
2051	380,000	11,400	391,400	97.59%
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$7,675,000</b>	<b>\$4,037,925</b>	<b>\$11,712,925</b>	<b>100.00%</b>

*[Remainder of page intentionally left blank]*

**TABLE 8 – TAX ADEQUACY**

2022 Net Principal and Interest Requirements <sup>(1)</sup>	\$392,225
\$0.2944 Tax Rate at 97% Collection Produces <sup>(2)</sup>	\$392,333
Average Net Principal and Interest Requirements (2022-2051) <sup>(1)</sup>	\$390,431
\$0.2930 Tax Rate at 97% Collection Produces <sup>(2)</sup>	\$390,468
Maximum Net Principal and Interest Requirements, 2045 <sup>(1)</sup>	\$392,900
\$0.2949 Tax Rate at 97% Collection Produces <sup>(2)</sup>	\$393,000

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes the Bonds.

<sup>(2)</sup> Source: Throckmorton Central Appraisal District. Based upon the 2021 Certified Value of \$137,387,024

**TABLE 9 – AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED BONDS**

Following the issuance of the Bonds, the District will have \$21,755,000 in voted but unissued bonds as further described below.

A summary of the bonds authorized at said Election is as follows:

<u>Purpose</u>	<u>Amount Authorized</u>	<u>Amount Previously Issued</u>	<u>Amount This Issue <sup>(1)</sup></u>	<u>Amount Remaining</u>
Construction, improvement, renovation, and equipment of school buildings in the District, to make a deposit into the capitalized interest fund, and to pay for the costs of issuance of the Bonds.	\$30,000,000	\$0	\$8,145,000	\$21,755,000

In addition to unlimited tax bonds, the District may incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance taxes, public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes any premium allocations that the District intends to apply against voted authorization.

*[Remainder of page intentionally left blank]*

**TABLE 10 - OTHER OBLIGATIONS <sup>(1)</sup>**

Notes Payable

The 2019 notes were issued in March, 2019 for the purpose of construction, acquisition and equipment of school facilities and to pay the costs associated with the issuance of the notes and were issued in accordance with Texas law. The original issue was for \$161,000, maturing in various amounts, with interest of 3.7%, and maturing on February 15, 2029.

The 2020 notes were issued in March, 2020 for the purpose of construction and renovation to school facilities and technology equipment and were issued in accordance with Texas law. The original issue was for \$110,000, maturing in various amounts, with interest of 2.5%, and maturing on March 18, 2025.

Future debt service requirements are as follows:

Period Ending	Notes Payable		
	Principal	Interest	Total
8/31			
2021	\$34,823	\$8,316	\$43,139
2022	36,395	7,207	43,602
2023	36,984	6,064	43,048
2024	38,588	4,885	43,473
2025	40,210	3,654	43,864
2026-29	73,000	5,531	78,531
Total	<u>\$260,000</u>	<u>\$35,657</u>	<u>\$295,657</u>

Capital Leases Payable

The Public Property Finance Act gives the District authority to enter into capital leases for the acquisition of personal property. Current principal and interest requirements are recorded in the applicable fund. Commitments under capitalized lease agreements for facilities and equipment provide minimum future rental payments as of August 31, 2020 as follows:

Year ending August 31,	Amount
2021	\$37,087
2022	70,624
2023	12,836
Less: Incremental borrowing rate of interest	<u>(2,809)</u>
Present Value of future lease payments	<u>\$117,738</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: District's Audited Financial Statements.

[Remainder of page intentionally left blank]



**TABLE 11 - GENERAL FUND REVENUES AND EXPENDITURE HISTORY**

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31,				
	2020	2019	2018	2017	2016
<b>REVENUES:</b>					
Local Sources	\$1,792,407	\$1,595,463	\$1,516,206	\$1,724,903	\$1,702,556
State Program Revenues	644,266	421,798	403,897	511,465	215,101
Federal Program Revenues	-	-	185	18,000	4,104
<b>Total Revenues</b>	<b>\$2,436,673</b>	<b>\$2,017,261</b>	<b>\$1,920,288</b>	<b>\$2,254,368</b>	<b>\$1,921,761</b>
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>					
Instruction	\$946,376	\$760,252	\$784,481	\$953,388	\$1,197,310
Instructional Resources and Media Svcs.	1,962	8,597	6,014	8,160	7,782
Curriculum and Instructional Development	4,673	6,733	6,384	7,717	1,226
School Leadership	147,638	116,159	141,673	118,700	140,551
Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Svcs.	67,796	59,357	50,785	43,928	48,053
Health Services	2,080	355	560	1,034	869
Student Transportation	52,333	112,345	154,725	54,091	42,998
Food Services	-	970	2,312	2,329	2,714
Extracurricular Activities	104,499	115,647	125,614	139,196	180,505
General Administration	535,632	365,825	237,731	242,097	243,200
Facilities Maintenance and Operations	303,933	463,748	237,253	339,093	253,717
Security and monitoring services	10,309	4,788	3,995	-	-
Data Processing Services	-	7,655	-	-	14,159
Community Service	-	19,967	20,952	11,650	-
Principal on Long-Term Debt	58,256	30,570	-	-	-
Interest on Long-Term Debt	12,645	3,731	-	-	-
Bond Issuance Costs and Fees	200	3,300	-	-	-
Capital Outlay	-	-	-	-	-
Contracted Instructional Services					
Between Schools	6,763	38,573	38,646	77,473	-
Payments to Shared Service Arrangements	22,793	6,616	17,785	18,467	7,971
Other Intergovernmental	-	-	-	23	-
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	<b>\$2,277,888</b>	<b>\$2,125,188</b>	<b>\$1,828,910</b>	<b>\$2,017,346</b>	<b>\$2,141,055</b>
<b>Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures</b>	<b>\$158,785</b>	<b>(\$107,927)</b>	<b>\$91,378</b>	<b>\$237,022</b>	<b>\$ (219,294)</b>
Other Financing sources and (Uses):					
Issuance of Non-Current Debt	110,000	161,000	-	-	-
Sale of Real and Personal Property	-	14,852	12,179	300	-
Proceeds from Capital Lease	-	50,400	145,514	-	-
Transfers In	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers Out	(112,384)	(9,176)	(20,810)	(19,500)	(30,138)
Total Other Financing Sources and (Uses)	(2,384)	217,076	136,883	(19,200)	(30,138)
<b>Net Change in Fund Balances</b>	<b>\$156,401</b>	<b>109,149</b>	<b>228,261</b>	<b>217,822</b>	<b>(249,432)</b>
<b>Fund Balance, Beginning</b>	<b>\$820,912</b>	<b>\$711,763</b>	<b>\$483,502</b>	<b>\$265,680</b>	<b>\$515,112</b>
<b>Fund Balance, Ending</b>	<b>\$977,313</b>	<b>\$820,912</b>	<b>\$711,763</b>	<b>\$483,502</b>	<b>\$265,680</b>

Source: District's Audited Financial Statements

**TABLE 12 - CURRENT INVESTMENTS (Unaudited as of June 30, 2021) <sup>(1)</sup>**

Description	Market Value	% of Total
Cash & Cash Equivalents	466,989.16	72.11%
LoneStar Investment Pool	180,631.23	27.89%
	\$647,620.39	100.00%

<sup>(1)</sup> District's records.

**APPENDIX B**

**AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

The information contained in this appendix consists of the Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District Audited Financial Statements (the "Report") for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2020.

The information presented represents only a part of the Report and does not purport to be a complete statement of the District's financial condition. Reference is made to the complete Annual Audit Report for additional information.

**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE  
INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

*ANNUAL FINANCIAL AND COMPLIANCE REPORT*

*FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020*

This page left intentionally blank.

**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**ANNUAL FINANCIAL AND COMPLIANCE REPORT**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>	<u>Exhibit</u>
Certificate of Board .....	1	
<u>Independent Auditor's Report:</u>		
Unmodified Opinion on Basic Financial Statements Accompanied by Required Supplementary Information and Other Supplementary Information .....	2	
Management's Discussion and Analysis .....	4	
<u>Basic Financial Statements:</u>		
Government-Wide Financial Statements:		
Statement of Net Position .....	10	A-1
Statement of Activities .....	11	B-1
Governmental Fund Financial Statements:		
Balance Sheet-Governmental Funds .....	12	C-1
Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds Balance Sheet to the Statement of Net Position .....	13	C-2
Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balance-Governmental Funds .....	14	C-3
Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances to the Statement of Activities .....	15	C-4
Fiduciary Fund Financial Statements:		
Statement of Fiduciary Net Position-Fiduciary Funds .....	16	E-1
Notes to the Financial Statements .....	17	
<u>Required Supplementary Information:</u>		
Budgetary Comparison Schedule-General Fund .....	40	G-1
Schedule of District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (TRS) .....	41	G-2
Schedule of District Pension Contributions to TRS .....	42	G-3
Schedule of District's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability (TRS) .....	43	G-4
Schedule of District OPEB Contributions to TRS .....	44	G-5
Notes to Required Supplementary Information .....	45	
<u>Combining Schedules:</u>		
Combining Balance Sheet-Nonmajor Governmental Funds .....	47	H-1
Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances-Nonmajor Governmental Funds .....	51	H-2
<u>Required TEA Schedules:</u>		
Schedule of Delinquent Taxes Receivable .....	56	J-1
Budgetary Comparison Schedule-Child Nutrition Program .....	58	J-4
<u>Overall Compliance and Internal Controls Section:</u>		
Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with <i>Government Auditing Standards</i> .....		
	60	
Summary Schedule of Prior Audit Findings .....	61	
Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs .....	62	
Corrective Action Plan .....	64	
<u>Federal Awards Section:</u>		
Report on Compliance with Requirements Applicable to Each Major Program and Internal Control Over Compliance in Accordance with the Uniform Guidance .....		
	66	
Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards .....	68	K-1
Notes to the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards .....	69	

This page left intentionally blank.

CERTIFICATE OF BOARD

Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District  
Name of School District

Throckmorton  
County

224-901  
Co.-Dist. Number

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached auditor's reports of the above named school district were reviewed and  approved  
-  disapproved for the year ended August 31, 2020, at a meeting of the board of school trustees of such school district on the  
16<sup>th</sup> day of December, 2020.

Sandra Redwine

Signature of Board Secretary

Kathy Hoop

Signature of Board President

If the auditor's reports were checked above as disapproved, the reason(s) therefore is/are (attach list if necessary):

This page left intentionally blank.



## Independent Auditor's Report

### UNMODIFIED OPINION ON BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS ACCOMPANIED BY REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION AND OTHER INFORMATION

Board of Trustees  
Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District  
210 College Street  
Throckmorton, Texas 76483

#### Report on the Financial Statements

I have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, the aggregate discretely presented component units, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information for Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District (the "District") as of and for the year ended August 31, 2020, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

#### *Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements*

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. This includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

#### *Auditor's Responsibility*

My responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on my audit. I conducted my audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that I plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. I believe that the audit evidence I have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for my audit opinions.

#### *Opinions*

In my opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, the aggregate discretely presented component units, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District as of August 31, 2020, and the respective changes in financial position and, where applicable, cash flows thereof for the year then ended in accordance with account principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

## Other Matters

### **Required Supplementary Information**

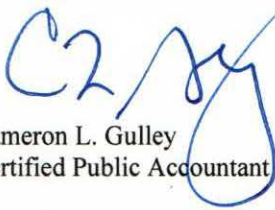
Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the Management's Discussion and Analysis, the Budgetary Comparison Schedule for the General Fund, Schedule of District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (TRS), Schedule of District Pension Contributions to TRS, Schedule of District's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability (TRS) and Schedule of District OPEB Contributions to TRS as listed in the table of contents be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. I have applied certain limited procedure to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to my inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge I obtained during my audit of the basic financial statements. I do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide me with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

### **Other Information**

My audit was made for the purpose of forming an opinion on the financial statements that collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements. The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, the TEA required schedules and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards, as required by Title 2 U.S. *Code of Federal Regulations* Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (Uniform Guidance) listed in the table of contents are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements. The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, the TEA required schedules and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In my opinion, the combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, the TEA required schedules and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards are fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole. The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, the TEA required schedules and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards have not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements, and accordingly, I do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on them.

### **Other Reporting Required by Government Auditing Standards**

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, I have also issued my report dated December 16, 2020, on my consideration of the District's internal control over financial reporting and on my tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of my testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.



Cameron L. Gulley  
Certified Public Accountant

December 16, 2020



# Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District

210 College Street, Throckmorton, Texas 76483

Telephone (940) 849-2411

Fax (940) 849-3345

*Let us prepare you!*

Dr. Michelle Cline, Superintendent

Mrs. Rhonda Riley, Principal

Mrs. Amy Anthony, Counselor

Mr. CJ Hantz, Athletic Director

---

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

In this section of the Annual Financial and Compliance Report, we, the managers of Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District, discuss and analyze the District's financial performance for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2020. Please read it in conjunction with the independent auditor's report on page 2 and the District's Basic Financial Statements which begin on page 10.

### USING THIS ANNUAL REPORT

This annual report consists of a series of financial statements. The government-wide financial statements include the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities (on pages 10 - 11). These provide information about the activities of the District as a whole and present a longer-term view of the District's property and debt obligations and other financial matters. They reflect the flow of total economic resources in a manner similar to the financial reports of a business enterprise.

Fund financial statements (starting on page 12) report the District's operations in more detail than the government-wide statements by providing information about the District's most significant funds. For governmental activities, these statements tell how services were financed in the short term as well as what resources remain for future spending. They reflect the flow of current financial resources and supply the basis for tax levies and the appropriations budget. For proprietary activities, fund financial statements tell how goods or services of the District were sold to departments within the District or to external customers and how the sales revenues covered the expenses of the goods or services. The remaining statements, fiduciary statements, provide financial information about activities for which the District acts solely as a trustee or agent for the benefit of those outside of the District.

The notes to the financial statements (starting on page 17) provide narrative explanations or additional data needed for full disclosure in the government-wide statements or the fund financial statements.

The combining statements for nonmajor funds contain even more information about the District's individual funds. These are not required by TEA. The sections labeled TEA Required Schedules and Federal Awards Section contain data used by monitoring or regulatory agencies for assurance that the District is using funds supplied in compliance with the terms of grants.

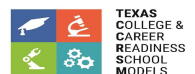
### Reporting the District as a Whole

#### *The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities*

The analysis of the District's overall financial condition and operations begins on page 5. Its primary purpose is to show whether the District is better off or worse off as a result of the year's activities. The Statement of Net Position includes all the District's assets and liabilities at the end of the year while the Statement of Activities includes all the revenues and expenses generated by the District's operations during the year. These apply the accrual basis of accounting which is the basis used by private sector companies.

All of the current year's revenues and expenses are taken into account regardless of when cash is received or paid. The District's revenues are divided into those provided by outside parties who share the costs of some programs, such as grants provided by the U.S. Department of Education to assist children with disabilities or from disadvantaged backgrounds (program revenues), and revenues provided by the taxpayers or by TEA in equalization funding processes (general revenues). All the District's assets are reported whether they serve the current year or future years. Liabilities are considered regardless of whether they must be paid in the current or future years.

These two statements report the District's net position and changes in them. The District's net position (the difference between assets and liabilities) provides one measure of the District's financial health, or financial position. Over time, increases or decreases in the District's net position are one indicator of whether its financial health is improving or deteriorating. To fully assess the overall health of the District, however, you should consider nonfinancial factors as well, such as changes in the District's average daily attendance or its property tax base and the condition of the District's facilities.



In the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities, we divide the District into one activity:

Governmental activities - All of the District's basic services are reported here, including the instruction, counseling, co-curricular activities, transportation, maintenance, community services, and general administration. Property taxes, tuition, fees, and state and federal grants finance most of these services.

## **Reporting the District's Most Significant Funds**

### ***Fund Financial Statements***

The fund financial statements begin on page 12 and provide detailed information about the most significant funds - not the District as a whole. Laws and contracts require the District to establish some funds, such as grants received under the No Child Left Behind Act from the U.S. Department of Education. The District's administration establishes many other funds to help it control and manage money for particular purposes (like campus activities). The District's fund types - governmental and proprietary - use the following accounting approaches.

Governmental funds - All of the District's basic services are reported in governmental funds. These use the modified accrual accounting (a method that measures the receipt and disbursement of cash and all other financial assets that can be readily converted to cash) and report balances that are available for future spending. The governmental fund statements provide a detailed short-term view of the District's general operations and the basic services it provides. We describe the differences between governmental activities (reported in the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities) and governmental funds in reconciliation schedules following each of the fund financial statements.

## **The District as Trustee**

### ***Reporting the District's Fiduciary Responsibilities***

The District is the trustee, or fiduciary, for money raised by student activities. All of the District's fiduciary activities are reported in separate Statements of Fiduciary Net Position on page 16. We exclude these resources from the District's other financial statements because the District cannot use these assets to finance its operations. The District is only responsible for ensuring that the assets reported in these funds are used for their intended purposes.

## **GOVERNMENT-WIDE FINANCIAL ANALYSIS**

The following analyses of comparative balances and changes therein is inclusive of the current year's and prior year's operations. Our analysis focuses on the net position (Table I) and changes in net position (Table II) of the District's governmental and business-type activities.

Total net position of the District's governmental activities increased from \$707,899 to \$910,848. Unrestricted net position - the part of net position that can be used to finance day-to-day operations without constraints established by debt covenants, enabling legislation, or other legal requirements - increased from (\$164,058) to \$425. Current and other assets increased by \$139,000 due cash by \$71,000 and receivables by \$68,000. Capital assets increased by \$97,000 due to asset additions in excess of depreciation expense. Long-term liabilities increased by \$114,000 due to the effects of net pension (NPL) and other post-employment benefit (OPEB) liabilities plus acquisition of new long-term debt. Other liabilities decreased by \$61,000 due to reductions in ending accounts payable. Deferred resource outflows and inflows related to NPL and OPEB liabilities increased by \$108,000 and \$89,000, respectively.

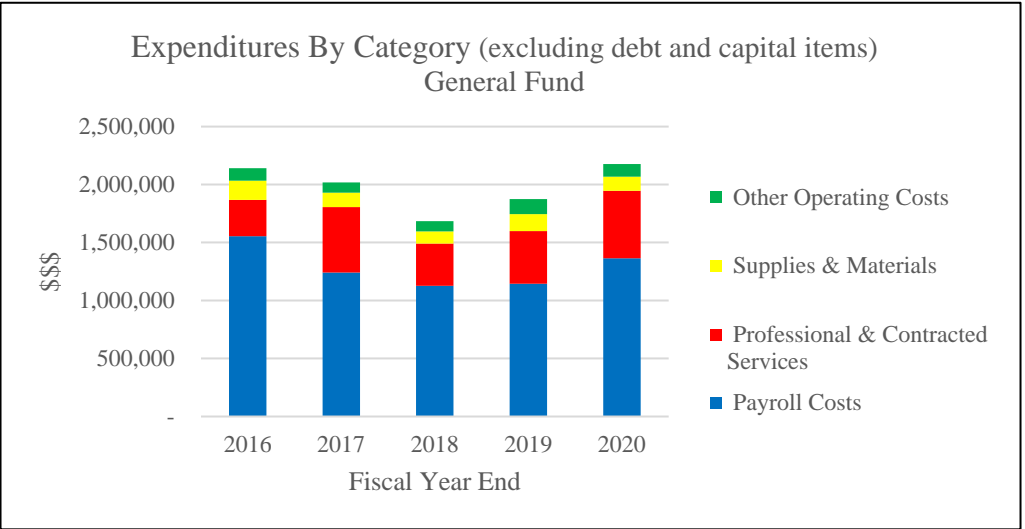
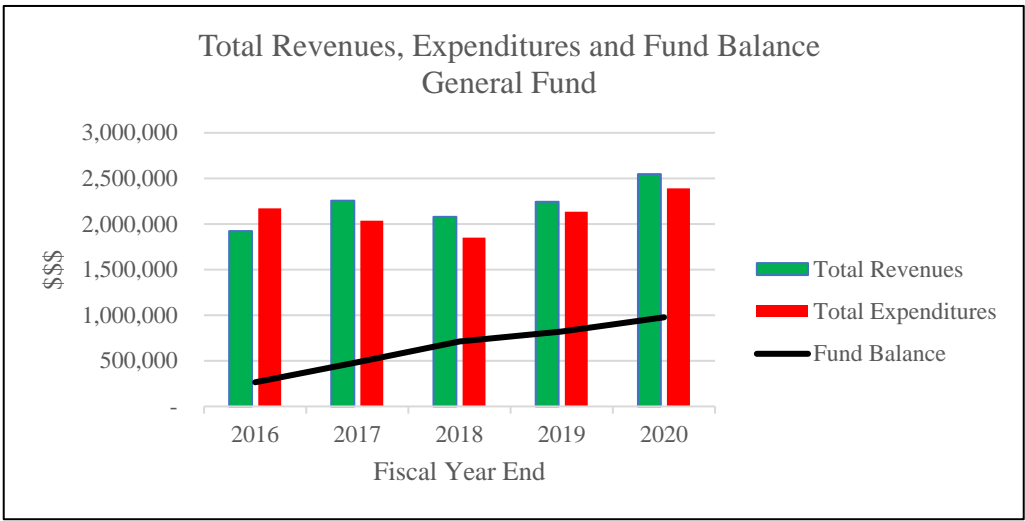
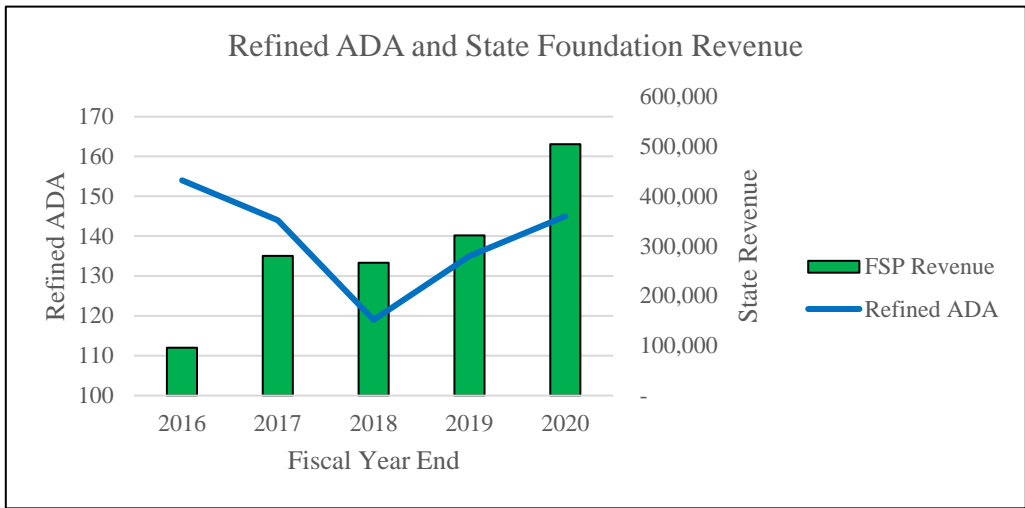
The District's total revenues were \$1.33 million more than last year. Most significantly, the District obtained a \$900,000 grant to upgrade its curriculum and instructional methods. The grant is reflected as an increase in operating grants and contributions as well as in most instructional expense functional categories. Additionally, the District received other grant funding for educational and supplemental activities. Property tax revenues increased due to valuation increases partially offset by a tax rate reduction. Other revenues decreased due to current year reclassification of local grants from miscellaneous to operating grants and contributions.

Overall, total expenses were \$1.1 million more than last year. Most of the net expense increases by function were related to the Charter School instructional grant received discussed above. Instructional expenses increased \$964,000 due to payroll costs, curriculum upgrades and instructional supplies (mostly all related to the Charter School grant). Instructional and school leadership expenses increased \$35,000 due to payroll costs. Child nutrition expenses increased \$52,000 due to payroll and food supplies. General administration expenses increased \$170,000 due primarily to professional fees related to tax limitation agreement applications received and approved during the year. Facilities maintenance and operations decreased by \$96,000 due to reductions in plant maintenance and repair costs. Other expenses were comparable to last year.

	Governmental Activities 2020	Governmental Activities 2019	Variance Increase/ (Decrease)
Current and other assets	\$ 1,178,884	\$ 1,039,412	\$ 139,472
Capital assets	1,289,768	1,192,638	97,130
Deferred resource outflows for TRS	379,127	270,761	108,368
Total assets and deferred resource outflows	2,847,781	2,502,811	344,970
Long-term liabilities	1,346,877	1,233,339	113,538
Other liabilities	126,305	187,308	(61,003)
Deferred resource inflows for TRS	463,751	374,265	89,486
Total liabilities and deferred resource inflows	1,936,933	1,794,912	142,021
Net position:			
Net investment in capital assets	910,423	866,644	43,779
Restricted for federal and state programs	0	5,313	(5,313)
Unrestricted	425	(164,058)	164,483
Total net position	\$ 910,848	\$ 707,899	\$ 202,949

	Governmental Activities 2020	Governmental Activities 2019	Variance Favorable/ (Unfavorable)
Revenues:			
Program Revenues:			
Charges for services	\$ 48,532	\$ 71,915	\$ (23,383)
Operating grants and contributions	1,654,706	373,203	1,281,503
General Revenues:			
Property taxes	1,559,504	1,508,920	50,584
State aid - formula grants	55,834	353,652	202,182
Other	8,684	187,747	(179,063)
Total Revenues	3,827,260	2,495,437	1,331,823
Expenses:			
Instruction, curriculum and media services	2,084,335	1,120,045	(964,290)
Instructional and school leadership	155,408	119,921	(35,487)
Student support services	153,588	156,916	3,328
Child nutrition	144,491	92,605	(51,886)
Extracurricular activities	191,070	190,943	(127)
General administration	551,455	381,882	(169,573)
Plant maintenance, security & data processing	325,413	418,763	93,350
Community service	0	20,654	20,654
Debt service	14,452	7,031	(7,421)
Contracted instructional services between schools	6,763	38,573	31,810
Payments related to shared service arrangements	22,793	6,616	(16,177)
Total Expenses	3,649,768	2,553,949	(1,095,819)
Increase (Decrease) in Net Position	177,492	(58,512)	236,004
Net Position - beginning of year	707,899	766,411	(58,512)
Prior period adjustment	25,457	0	25,457
Net Position - end of year	\$ 910,848	\$ 707,899	\$ 202,949

The following charts depict trend information for the past five years.



## THE DISTRICT'S FUNDS

As the District completed the year, its governmental funds (as presented in the balance sheet on page 12) reported a combined fund balance of \$1,003,270, an increase of \$177,045 (including beginning balance adjustments) in the District's Governmental Funds from last year's fund balance of \$826,225. The primary reasons for the net increase are similar to the narrative related to the tables above. The major exceptions are depreciation expense which is not charged to the governmental funds and the net effect relative to GASB 68 and 75 whose impacts are only at the government-wide level financial statements. The specific variances in the changes in fund balance versus the change in net position are detailed out on Exhibit C-4 on the accompanying general purpose financial statements.

The Board of Trustees revised the District's budget several times during the year. The most significant budget amendments were in general administration for professional fees related to tax limitation agreement applications, instructional increases for payroll and supplies, and facilities maintenance and operations for repairs and improvements.

The District's General Fund balance of \$977,313 reported on pages 14 and 40 differs from the General Fund's budgetary fund balance of \$628,956 reported in the budgetary comparison schedule on page 40. Most of the positive budget variance was due to overall expenditures being less than budgeted.

## CAPITAL ASSET AND DEBT ADMINISTRATION

### *Capital Assets*

At the end of fiscal year 2020, the District had \$2,437,602 invested in a broad range of capital assets including facilities and equipment for instruction, transportation, athletics, administration, and maintenance. Following were additions for the year:

Building and gymnasium improvements	\$	161,300
Security upgrades		19,911
Hustler mower		5,249
Electrostatic disinfectant sprayer		10,106
Total Asset Additions	\$	<u>196,566</u>

### *Debt*

At year-end, the District had six outstanding long-term liabilities in the form of maintenance tax notes and capital leases obtained in order to finance construction and rehabilitation of school facilities and vehicles. Outstanding debt compared to last year is as follows:

	2020	2019
Maintenance tax notes	\$ 260,000	\$ 161,000
Capital lease liabilities	117,738	164,994
Total Long-Term Debt	<u>\$ 377,738</u>	<u>\$ 325,994</u>

## ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND RATES

The District should continue to maintain its financial health. A budget adopted for 2020-21 reflected tax rates at \$0.9955 for maintenance and operations. General fund revenues and expenditures were budgeted at \$2.26 million for a projected balanced budget. Therefore, the District expects that its general fund balance will approximate \$977,000 at August 31, 2021.

## CONTACTING THE DISTRICT'S FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

This financial report is designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, customers, and investors and creditors a general overview of the District's finances and to show the District's accountability for the money it receives. If you have any questions about this report or need additional financial information, contact the District's business office at: Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District, 210 College Street, Throckmorton, Texas 76483.

This page left intentionally blank.



*BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS*

This page left intentionally blank.

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
AUGUST 31, 2020

EXHIBIT A-1

Data Control Codes	Primary Government Governmental Activities
<b>ASSETS</b>	
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 770,183
1120 Current Investments	180,414
1220 Property Taxes - Delinquent	86,621
1230 Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	(35,705)
1240 Due from Other Governments	147,156
1290 Other Receivables, Net	17,818
1410 Prepayments	12,397
Capital Assets:	
1510 Land	100,000
1520 Buildings, Net	768,216
1530 Furniture and Equipment, Net	215,869
1550 Leased Property Under Capital Leases, Net	161,491
1590 Infrastructure, Net	44,192
1000 Total Assets	2,468,652
<b>DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>	
1705 Deferred Outflow Related to TRS Pension	244,394
1706 Deferred Outflow Related to TRS OPEB	134,735
1700 Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	379,129
<b>LIABILITIES</b>	
2110 Accounts Payable	32,737
2140 Interest Payable	1,607
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	87,524
2180 Due to Other Governments	1,088
2200 Accrued Expenses	2,951
2300 Unearned Revenue	398
Noncurrent Liabilities:	
2501 Due Within One Year	69,556
2502 Due in More Than One Year	308,182
2540 Net Pension Liability (District's Share)	406,553
2545 Net OPEB Liability (District's Share)	562,586
2000 Total Liabilities	1,473,182
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>	
2605 Deferred Inflow Related to TRS Pension	146,791
2606 Deferred Inflow Related to TRS OPEB	316,960
2600 Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	463,751
<b>NET POSITION</b>	
3200 Net Investment in Capital Assets	910,423
3900 Unrestricted	425
3000 Total Net Position	\$ 910,848

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

EXHIBIT B-1

Data Control Codes	1	Program Revenues		6
		3	4	
	Expenses	Charges for Services	Operating Grants and Contributions	Primary Gov. Governmental Activities

**Primary Government:**

GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES:

11	Instruction	\$ 1,621,048	\$ 1,200	\$ 673,619	\$ (946,229)
12	Instructional Resources and Media Services	3,634	-	-	(3,634)
13	Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	459,653	-	453,342	(6,311)
23	School Leadership	155,408	-	12,040	(143,368)
31	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	71,393	-	4,785	(66,608)
33	Health Services	2,080	-	1,390	(690)
34	Student (Pupil) Transportation	80,115	-	7,030	(73,085)
35	Food Services	144,491	1,614	96,368	(46,509)
36	Extracurricular Activities	191,070	30,298	40,073	(120,699)
41	General Administration	551,455	-	241,873	(309,582)
51	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	309,008	15,420	102,108	(191,480)
52	Security and Monitoring Services	16,405	-	22,078	5,673
72	Debt Service - Interest on Long-Term Debt	14,252	-	-	(14,252)
73	Debt Service - Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	200	-	-	(200)
91	Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	6,763	-	-	(6,763)
93	Payments Related to Shared Services Arrangements	22,793	-	-	(22,793)
	[TP] TOTAL PRIMARY GOVERNMENT:	\$ 3,649,768	\$ 48,532	\$ 1,654,706	(1,946,530)

Data  
Control  
Codes

General Revenues:

Taxes:

MT	Property Taxes, Levied for General Purposes	1,559,504
SF	State Aid - Formula Grants	555,834
IE	Investment Earnings	4,527
MI	Miscellaneous Local and Intermediate Revenue	4,157
TR	Total General Revenues	2,124,022
CN	Change in Net Position	177,492
NB	Net Position - Beginning	707,899
PA	Prior Period Adjustment	25,457
NE	Net Position - Ending	\$ 910,848

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
BALANCE SHEET  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
AUGUST 31, 2020

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	Major Special Revenue Fund	Other Funds	Total Governmental Funds
<b>ASSETS</b>				
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 732,079	\$ -	\$ 38,104	\$ 770,183
1120 Investments - Current	180,414	-	-	180,414
1220 Property Taxes - Delinquent	86,621	-	-	86,621
1230 Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	(35,705)	-	-	(35,705)
1240 Due from Other Governments	112,479	2,032	32,645	147,156
1260 Due from Other Funds	36,238	-	-	36,238
1290 Other Receivables	783	-	17,035	17,818
1410 Prepayments	12,397	-	-	12,397
1000 Total Assets	<u>\$ 1,125,306</u>	<u>\$ 2,032</u>	<u>\$ 87,784</u>	<u>\$ 1,215,122</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
2110 Accounts Payable	\$ 21,698	\$ 2,032	\$ 9,007	\$ 32,737
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	72,521	-	15,003	87,524
2170 Due to Other Funds	-	-	36,238	36,238
2180 Due to Other Governments	1,088	-	-	1,088
2200 Accrued Expenditures	1,770	-	1,181	2,951
2300 Unearned Revenue	-	-	398	398
2000 Total Liabilities	<u>97,077</u>	<u>2,032</u>	<u>61,827</u>	<u>160,936</u>
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>				
2601 Unavailable Revenue - Property Taxes	50,916	-	-	50,916
2600 Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	<u>50,916</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>50,916</u>
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>				
Nonspendable Fund Balance:				
3430 Prepaid Items	12,397	-	-	12,397
3600 Unassigned Fund Balance	964,916	-	25,957	990,873
3000 Total Fund Balances	<u>977,313</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>25,957</u>	<u>1,003,270</u>
4000 Total Liabilities, Deferred Inflows & Fund Balances	<u>\$ 1,125,306</u>	<u>\$ 2,032</u>	<u>\$ 87,784</u>	<u>\$ 1,215,122</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEET TO THE  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
AUGUST 31, 2020

EXHIBIT C-2

<b>Total Fund Balances - Governmental Funds</b>	\$	1,003,270
<b>1</b> Capital assets used in governmental activities are not financial resources and therefore are not reported in governmental funds. At the beginning of the year, the cost of these assets was \$2,241,036 and the accumulated depreciation was (\$1,048,398). In addition, long-term liabilities, including bonds payable, are not due and payable in the current period, and, therefore are not reported as liabilities in the funds. The net effect of including the beginning balances for capital assets (net of depreciation) and long-term debt in the governmental activities is to increase net position.		866,644
<b>2</b> Current year capital outlays and long-term debt principal payments are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as increases in capital assets and reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of including the capital outlays and debt principal payments is to increase net position.		254,822
<b>3</b> Included in the items related to debt is the recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability required by GASB 68. The net position related to TRS included a deferred resource outflow in the amount of \$244,394, a deferred resource inflow in the amount of \$146,791 and a net pension liability in the amount of \$406,553. This resulted in a decrease in net position.		(308,950)
<b>4</b> Included in the items related to debt is the recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability required by GASB 75. The net position related to TRS included a deferred resource outflow in the amount of \$134,735, a deferred resource inflow in the amount of \$316,960 and a net OPEB liability in the amount of \$562,586. This resulted in a decrease in net position.		(744,811)
<b>5</b> Depreciation expense increases accumulated depreciation. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position.		(99,436)
<b>6</b> Various other reclassifications and eliminations are necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. These include recognizing unavailable revenue from property taxes as revenue, reclassifying loan proceeds as an increase in long-term debt, and recognizing the liabilities associated with maturing long-term debt and interest. The net effect of these reclassifications and recognitions is to decrease net position.		(60,691)
<b>19 Net Position of Governmental Activities</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>910,848</b>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES  
 GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	Major Special Revenue Fund	Other Funds	Total Governmental Funds
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 1,792,407	\$ -	\$ 185,661	\$ 1,978,068
5800 State Program Revenues	644,266	-	99,150	743,416
5900 Federal Program Revenues	-	775,781	252,839	1,028,620
5020 Total Revenues	<u>2,436,673</u>	<u>775,781</u>	<u>537,650</u>	<u>3,750,104</u>
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	946,376	324,329	271,548	1,542,253
0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services	1,962	-	1,672	3,634
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	4,673	432,738	20,604	458,015
0023 School Leadership	147,638	-	-	147,638
0031 Guidance, Counseling, and Evaluation Services	67,796	-	-	67,796
0033 Health Services	2,080	-	-	2,080
0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation	52,333	-	1,523	53,856
0035 Food Services	-	-	131,280	131,280
0036 Extracurricular Activities	104,499	-	49,341	153,840
0041 General Administration	535,632	-	3,804	539,436
0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	303,933	18,714	7,396	330,043
0052 Security and Monitoring Services	10,309	-	21,179	31,488
Debt Service:				
0071 Principal on Long-Term Debt	58,256	-	-	58,256
0072 Interest on Long-Term Debt	12,645	-	-	12,645
0073 Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	200	-	-	200
Capital Outlay:				
0081 Facilities Acquisition and Construction	-	-	146,500	146,500
Intergovernmental:				
0091 Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	6,763	-	-	6,763
0093 Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	22,793	-	-	22,793
6030 Total Expenditures	<u>2,277,888</u>	<u>775,781</u>	<u>654,847</u>	<u>3,708,516</u>
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	<u>158,785</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(117,197)</u>	<u>41,588</u>
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>				
7914 Non-Current Loans	110,000	-	-	110,000
7915 Transfers In	-	-	112,384	112,384
8911 Transfers Out (Use)	(112,384)	-	-	(112,384)
7080 Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	<u>(2,384)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>112,384</u>	<u>110,000</u>
1200 Net Change in Fund Balances	156,401	-	(4,813)	151,588
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	820,912	-	5,313	826,225
1300 Increase (Decrease) in Fund Balance	-	-	25,457	25,457
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	<u>\$ 977,313</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 25,957</u>	<u>\$ 1,003,270</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,  
 AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

EXHIBIT C-4

<b>Total Net Change in Fund Balances - Governmental Funds</b>	\$	151,588
Current year capital outlays and long-term debt principal payments are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as increases in capital assets and reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of removing the capital outlays and debt principal payments is to increase net position.		254,822
Depreciation is not recognized as an expense in governmental funds since it does not require the use of current financial resources. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position.		(99,436)
Various other reclassifications and eliminations are necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. These include recognizing unavailable revenue from property taxes as revenue, adjusting current year revenue to show the revenue earned from the current year's tax levy, reclassifying the proceeds of long-term debt, and recognizing the liabilities associated with maturing long-term debt and interest. The net effect of these reclassifications and recognitions is to decrease net position.		(86,570)
GASB 68 required that certain plan expenditures be de-expended and recorded as deferred resource outflows. Those contributions made after the measurement date of the plan caused the change in ending net position to increase by \$37,830. Contributions made before the measurement date and during the previous fiscal year were also expended and recorded as a reduction in net pension liability. This caused a decrease in the change in net position totaling \$26,514. Finally, the proportionate share of the TRS pension expense on the plan as a whole had to be recorded. The net pension expense decreased the change in net position by \$52,410. The net result is a decrease in the change in net position.		(41,094)
GASB 75 required that certain plan expenditures be de-expended and recorded as deferred resource outflows. Those contributions made after the measurement date of the plan caused the change in ending net position to increase by \$10,881. Contributions made before the measurement date and during the previous fiscal year were also expended and recorded as a reduction in net OPEB liability. This caused a decrease in the change in net position totaling \$8,285. Finally, the proportionate share of the TRS OPEB expense on the plan as a whole had to be recorded. The net OPEB expense decreased the change in net position by \$4,414. The net result is a decrease in the change in net position.		(1,818)
<b>Change in Net Position of Governmental Activities</b>	<u>\$</u>	<u>177,492</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.



THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION  
FIDUCIARY FUNDS  
AUGUST 31, 2020

---

	Agency Fund
<hr/>	
<b>ASSETS</b>	
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 14,379
Total Assets	<u>\$ 14,379</u>
 <b>LIABILITIES</b>	
Due to Student Groups	\$ 14,379
Total Liabilities	<u>\$ 14,379</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

This page left intentionally blank.

**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
*NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS*  
*AT AND FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020*

**I. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District (the "District") is a public educational agency operating under the applicable laws and regulations of the State of Texas. It is governed by a seven member Board of Trustees (the "Board") elected by registered voters of the District. The District prepares its basic financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) promulgated by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) and other authoritative sources identified in **GASB Statement No. 76**, and it complies with the requirements of the appropriate version of Texas Education Agency's *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide* (the "Resource Guide") and the requirements of contracts and grants of agencies from which it receives funds.

*Pensions.* The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

*Other Post-Employment Benefits (OPEB).* The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) TRS-Care Plan has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net OPEB liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits, OPEB expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS-Care's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. There are no investments as this is a pay-as you-go plan and all cash is held in a cash account.

The District applied Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") Statement No. 72, Fair Value Measurement and Application. GASB Statement No. 72 provides guidance for determining a fair value measurement for reporting purposes and applying fair value to certain investments and disclosures related to all fair value measurements.

**A. REPORTING ENTITY**

The Board of Trustees (the "Board") is elected by the public and it has the authority to make decisions, appoint administrators and managers, and significantly influence operations. It also has the primary accountability for fiscal matters. Therefore, the District is a financial reporting entity as defined by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") in its Statement No. 14, "The Financial Reporting Entity."

**B. GOVERNMENT-WIDE AND FUND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities are government-wide financial statements. They report information on all of the District's nonfiduciary activities with most of the interfund activities removed. *Governmental activities* include programs supported primarily by taxes, State foundation funds, grants and other intergovernmental revenues. *Business-type activities* include operations that rely to a significant extent on fees and charges for support.

The Statement of Activities demonstrates how other people or entities that participate in programs the District operates have shared in the payment of the direct costs. The "charges for services" column includes payments made by parties that purchase, use, or directly benefit from goods or services provided by a given function or segment of the District. Examples include tuition paid by students not residing in the district, school lunch charges, etc. The "grants and contributions" column includes amounts paid by organizations outside the District to help meet the operational or capital requirements of a given function. Examples include grants under the Elementary and Secondary Education Act. If a revenue is not a program revenue, it is a general revenue used to support all of the District's functions. Taxes are always general revenues.

Interfund activities between governmental funds appear as due to/due froms on the Governmental Fund Balance Sheet and as other resources and other uses on the governmental fund Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balance. All interfund transactions between governmental funds are eliminated on the government-wide statements. Interfund activities between governmental funds and fiduciary funds remain as due to/due froms on the government-wide Statement of Activities.

The fund financial statements provide reports on the financial condition and results of operations for three fund categories - governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary. Since the resources in the fiduciary funds cannot be used for District operations, they are not included in the government-wide statements. The District considers some governmental funds major and reports their financial condition and results of operations in a separate column.

Proprietary funds distinguish operating revenues and expenses from nonoperating items. Operating revenues result from providing goods and services in connection with a proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations; they usually come from exchange or exchange-like transactions. All other revenues are nonoperating. Operating expenses can be tied specifically to the production of the goods and services, such as materials and labor and direct overhead. Other expenses are nonoperating.

### **C. MEASUREMENT FOCUS, BASIS OF ACCOUNTING, AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION**

The government-wide financial statements use the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of the related cash flows. Property taxes are recognized as revenues in the year for which they are levied. Grants and similar items are recognized as revenue as soon as all eligibility requirements imposed by the provider have been met.

Governmental fund financial statements use the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. With this measurement focus, only current assets, current liabilities and fund balances are included on the balance sheet. Operating statements of these funds present net increases and decreases in current assets (i.e., revenues and other financing sources and expenditures and other financing uses).

The modified accrual basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they become both measurable and available, and it recognizes expenditures in the accounting period in which the fund liability is incurred, if measurable, except for unmatured interest and principal on long-term debt, which is recognized when due. The expenditures related to certain compensated absences and claims and judgments are recognized when the obligations are expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

Revenues from local sources consist primarily of property taxes. Property tax revenues and revenues received from the State are recognized under the "susceptible to accrual" concept, that is, when they are both measurable and available. Miscellaneous revenues are recorded as revenue when received in cash because they are generally not measurable until actually received. Investment earnings are recorded as earned, since they are both measurable and available.

Grant funds are considered to be earned to the extent of expenditures made under the provisions of the grant. Accordingly, when such funds are received, they are recorded as unearned revenues until related and authorized expenditures have been made. If balances have not been expended by the end of the project period, grantors some times require the District to refund all or part of the unused amount.

The Proprietary Fund Types and Fiduciary Funds are accounted for on a flow of economic resources measurement focus and utilize the accrual basis of accounting. This basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they are earned and become measurable and expenses in the accounting period in which they are incurred and become measurable. The District applies all GASB pronouncements as well as the Financial Accounting Standards Board pronouncements issued on or before November 30, 1989, unless these pronouncements conflict or contradict GASB pronouncements. With this measurement focus, all assets and all liabilities associated with the operation of these funds are included on the fund Statement of Net Position. The fund equity is segregated into invested in capital assets net of related debt, restricted net assets, and unrestricted net assets.

Agency Funds utilize the accrual basis of accounting but do not have a measurement focus as they report only assets and liabilities.

## D. FUND ACCOUNTING

The District reports the following major governmental funds:

1. **The General Fund.** The general fund is the District's primary operating fund. It accounts for all financial resources except those required to be accounted for in another fund.
2. **Charter School Grant Special Revenue Funds.** The District accounts for resources restricted to, or designated for, specific purposes by the District or a grantor in a special revenue fund. Most Federal and some State financial assistance is accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund, and sometimes unused balances must be returned to the grantor at the close of specified project periods.

Additionally, the District reports the following fund type(s):

Governmental Funds:

3. **Special Revenue Funds.** The District accounts for resources restricted to, or designated for, specific purposes by the District or a grantor in a special revenue fund. Most Federal and some State financial assistance is accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund, and sometimes unused balances must be returned to the grantor at the close of specified project periods.
4. **Capital Projects Fund** - The capital projects fund accounts for resources accumulated and payments made for the acquisition and improvement of sites, construction and remodel of facilities and procurement of equipment necessary for providing educational programs for all students within the District.

Fiduciary Funds:

5. **Agency Funds.** The District accounts for resources held for others in a custodial capacity in agency funds. The District's Agency Fund is the "Throckmorton Collegiate Student Activity Fund."

## E. OTHER ACCOUNTING POLICIES

1. For purposes of the statement of cash flows for proprietary funds, the District considers highly liquid investments to be cash equivalents if they have a maturity of three months or less when purchased.
2. The District reports inventories of supplies at weighted average cost including consumable maintenance, instructional, office, athletic, and transportation items. Supplies are recorded as expenditures when they are consumed. Inventories of food commodities are recorded at market values supplied by the Texas Department of Human Services. Although commodities are received at no cost, their fair market value is supplied by the Texas Department of Human Services and recorded as inventory and unearned revenue when received. When requisitioned, inventory and unearned revenue are relieved, expenditures are charged, and revenue is recognized for an equal amount.
3. In the government-wide financial statements, and proprietary fund types in the fund financial statements, long-term debt and other long-term obligations are reported as liabilities in the applicable governmental activities, business-type activities, or proprietary fund type statement of net assets. Bond premiums and discounts are deferred and amortized over the life of the bonds using the effective interest method. Bonds payable are reported net of the applicable bond premium or discount.

In the fund financial statements, governmental fund types recognize bond premiums and discounts, as well as bond issuance costs, during the current period. The face amount of debt issued is reported as other financing sources. Premiums received on debt issuances are reported as other financing sources while discounts on debt issuances are reported as other financing uses. Issuance costs, whether or not withheld from the actual debt proceeds received, are reported as debt service expenditures.

4. It is the District's policy to permit some employees to accumulate earned but unused vacation and sick pay benefits. There is no liability for unpaid accumulated sick leave since the District does not have a policy to pay any amounts when employees separate from service with the district. All vacation pay is accrued when incurred in the government-wide, proprietary, and fiduciary fund financial statements. A liability for these amounts is reported in governmental funds only if they have matured, for example, as a result of employee resignations and retirements.

5. Capital assets, which include land, buildings, furniture and equipment are reported in the applicable governmental or business-type activities columns in the government-wide financial statements. Capital assets are defined by the District as assets with an initial, individual cost of more than \$5,000 and an estimated useful life in excess of two years. Such assets are recorded at historical cost or estimated historical cost if purchased or constructed. Donated capital assets are recorded at estimated fair market value at the date of donation.

The costs of normal maintenance and repairs that do not add to the value of the asset or materially extend assets lives are not capitalized. Major outlays for capital assets and improvements are capitalized as projects are constructed.

Buildings, furniture and equipment of the District are depreciated using the straight line method over the following estimated useful lives:

<u>Asset:</u>	<u>Years</u>
Buildings	20-40
Building improvements	20-40
Infrastructure	20
Vehicles and equipment	5-10

6. In the fund financial statements, governmental funds report fund balance as nonspendable if the amounts cannot be spent because they are either not in spendable form or are legally or contractually required to remain intact. Restrictions of fund balance are for amounts that are restricted to specific purposes by an external entity (creditors, grantors, governmental regulations) or the restriction is imposed by law through constitutional provision or enabling legislation. Commitments of fund balance represent amounts that can only be used for specific purposes pursuant to constraints imposed by the District's board. Assignments of fund balance are amounts set aside by the District's superintendent or his designee with the intent they be used for specific purposes.
7. When the District incurs an expense for which it may use either restricted or unrestricted assets, it uses the restricted assets first whenever they will have to be returned if they are not used.
8. In general governments are required to report investments at fair value. These methods are disclosed in section III.A. below.
9. In addition to assets, the statement of financial position will sometimes report a separate section for deferred outflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, *deferred outflows of resources*, represents a consumption of net position that applies to a future period(s) and so will *not* be recognized as an outflow of resources (expense/expenditure) until then. Items reported as deferred outflows of resources are as follows:

Deferred charges related to TRS retirement	\$ 244,394
Deferred charges related to TRS OPEB	\$ 134,735

10. In addition to liabilities, the statement of financial position will sometimes report a separate section for deferred inflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, *deferred inflows of resources*, represents an acquisition of net position that applies to a future period(s) and so will *not* be recognized as an inflow of resources (revenue) until that time. The District has one type of item which arises only under a modified accrual basis of accounting that qualifies for reporting in this category. Uncollected property taxes which are assumed collectible are reported in this category on the balance sheet for governmental funds. They are not reported in this category on the government wide statement of net position. Items reported as deferred inflows of resources are as follows:
- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| Deferred charges related to TRS retirement | \$ 146,791 |
| Deferred charges related to TRS OPEB       | \$ 316,960 |
11. The Data Control Codes refer to the account code structure prescribed by TEA in the ***Financial Accountability System Resource Guide***. Texas Education Agency requires school districts to display these codes in the financial statements filed with the Agency in order to insure accuracy in building a Statewide data base for policy development and funding plans.

**II. STEWARDSHIP, COMPLIANCE, AND ACCOUNTABILITY**

**A. BUDGETARY DATA**

The Board of Trustees adopts an "appropriated budget" for the General Fund and the Food Service Fund (which is included in the Special Revenue Funds). The District is required to present the adopted and final amended budgeted revenues and expenditures for each of these funds. The District compares the final amended budget to actual revenues and expenditures. The General Fund Budget report appears in Exhibit G-1 in RSI and the other reports are in Exhibits J4 and J5.

The following procedures are followed in establishing the budgetary data reflected in the general-purpose financial statements:

1. Prior to August 20 the District prepares a budget for the next succeeding fiscal year beginning September 1. The operating budget includes proposed expenditures and the means of financing them.
2. A meeting of the Board is then called for the purpose of adopting the proposed budget. At least ten days' public notice of the meeting must be given.
3. Prior to September 1, the budget is legally enacted through passage of a resolution by the Board. Once a budget is approved, it can only be amended at the function and fund level by approval of a majority of the members of the Board. Amendments are presented to the Board at its regular meetings. Each amendment must have Board approval. As required by law, such amendments are made before the fact, are reflected in the official minutes of the Board, and are not made after fiscal year end. Because the District has a policy of careful budgetary control, several amendments were necessary during the year. (However, none of these were significant.)
4. Each budget is controlled by the budget coordinator at the revenue and expenditure function/object level. Budgeted amounts are as amended by the Board. All budget appropriations lapse at year end.

**B. EXCESS OF EXPENDITURES OVER APPROPRIATIONS**

During the year, the District had the following functional categories that exceeded its final amended budget by more than \$2,500:

Functional Category	Amount Over Budget	Explanation
None		

**III. DETAILED NOTES ON ALL FUNDS AND ACCOUNT GROUPS**

**A. CASH, CASH EQUIVALENTS AND INVESTMENTS**

**Cash and Cash Equivalents**

District Policies and Legal and Contractual Provisions Governing Deposits

Custodial Credit Risk for Deposits. State law requires governmental entities to contract with financial institutions in which funds will be deposited to secure those deposits with insurance or pledged securities with a fair value equaling or exceeding the amount on deposit at the end of each business day. The pledged securities must be in the name of the governmental entity and held by the entity or its agent. Since the district complies with this law, it has no custodial credit risk for deposits. The District was not exposed to custodial credit risk.

Foreign Currency Risk. The District limits the risk that changes in exchange rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment or a deposit by having no deposits denominated in a foreign currency. Therefore, the District was not exposed to foreign currency risk.

As of August 31, 2020, the following are the District's cash and cash equivalents (including it's student activity and private purpose trust fund) with respective maturities and credit rating:

Type of Deposit	Fair Value	Percent	Maturity < 1 Yr	Maturity 1-10 Yrs	Maturity > 10 Yrs	Credit Rating
Cash:						
Petty cash	\$ 900	0%	\$ 900			N/A
Money market and FDIC insured accounts	783,662	81%	783,662			N/A
Investment pools	180,414	19%	180,414			AAA
Total Cash and Cash Equivalents	<u>\$ 964,976</u>	<u>100%</u>	<u>\$ 964,976</u>			

## **Investments**

### District Policies and Legal and Contractual Provisions Governing Investments

#### Compliance with the Public Funds Investment Act

The **Public Funds Investment Act**(Government Code Chapter 2256) contains specific provisions in the areas of investment practices, management reports, and establishment of appropriate policies. Among other things, it requires a governmental entity to adopt, implement, and publicize an investment policy. That policy must address the following areas: (1) safety of principal and liquidity, (2) portfolio diversification, (3) allowable investments, (4) acceptable risk levels, (5) expected rates of return, (6) maximum allowable stated maturity of portfolio investments, (7) maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed based on the stated maturity date for the portfolio, (8) investment staff quality and capabilities, (9) and bid solicitation preferences for certificates of deposit.

Statutes authorize the entity to invest in (1) obligations of the U.S. Treasury, certain U.S. agencies, and the State of Texas and its agencies; (2) guaranteed or secured certificates of deposit issued by state and national banks domiciled in Texas; (3) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities and other political subdivisions of any state having been rated as to investment quality not less than an "A"; (4) No load money market funds with a weighted average maturity of 90 days or less; (5) fully collateralized repurchase agreements; (6) commercial paper having a stated maturity of 270 days or less from the date of issuance and is not rated less than A-1 or P-1 by two nationally recognized credit rating agencies OR one nationally recognized credit agency and is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit; (7) secured corporate bonds rated not lower than "AA-" or the equivalent; (8) public funds investment pools; and (9) guaranteed investment contracts for bond proceeds investment only, with a defined termination date and secured by U.S. Government direct or agency obligations approved by the Texas public Funds Investment Act in an amount equal to the bond proceeds. The Act also requires the entity to have independent auditors perform test procedures related to investment practices as provided by the Act. The District is in substantial compliance with the requirements of the Act and with local policies.

Additional policies and contractual provisions governing investments for the District are specified below:

**Credit Risk.** To limit the risk that an issuer or other counterparty to an investment will not fulfill its obligations the District limits investments in commercial paper, corporate bonds and mutual bond funds to the top ratings issued by nationally recognized statistical rating organizations (NRSROs). As of August 31, 2020, all of the District's investments were rated AAA by Standard & Poor's rating agency. Therefore, the District was not exposed to credit risk.

**Custodial Credit Risk for Investments.** To limit the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty to a transaction, a government will not be able to recover the value of investment or collateral securities that are in possession of an outside party the District requires counterparties to register the securities in the name of the district and hand them over to the District or its designated agent. This includes securities in securities lending transactions. All of the securities are in the District's name and held by the District or its agent. The District was not exposed to custodial credit risk.

**Concentration of Credit Risk.** To limit the risk of loss attributed to the magnitude of a government's investment in a single issuer, the District limits investments to less than 5% of its total investments. The District further limits investments in a single issuer when they would cause investment risks to be significantly greater in the governmental and business-type activities, individual major funds, aggregate non-major funds and fiduciary fund types than they are in the primary government. Usually this limitation is 20%. The District was not exposed to concentration of credit risk.



Interest Rate Risk. To limit the risk that changes in interest rates will adversely affect the fair value of investments, the District requires a review of its investment portfolio at least annually to determine whether market conditions pose an inherent risk of future interest rates either rising or falling which could significantly affect investment performance.

The District was exposed to interest rate risk for its municipal bond investments. However, the District’s intent is to hold the investments to maturity at which time the payout will be at par price regardless of interest rate market conditions. The District’s belief that the current investment market conditions warrant a greater inherent risk to maintain the status quo by maintaining investments in shorter-termed maturity investment vehicles that offer little to no rate of return.

Foreign Currency Risk for Investments. The District limits the risk that changes in exchange rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment by not investing in any foreign currency. Therefore, the District was not exposed to foreign currency risk.

The District categorizes its fair value measurements with the fair value hierarchy established by generally accepted accounting principles. The hierarchy is based on the valuation inputs used to measure the fair value of the asset. Level 1 inputs are quoted prices in active markets for identical assets; Level 2 inputs are significant other observable inputs; Level 3 inputs are significant unobservable inputs. Investments that are measured at fair value using the net asset value per share (or its equivalent) as a practical expedient are not classified in the fair value hierarchy below. In instances where inputs used to measure fair value fall into different levels in the above fair value hierarchy, fair value measurements in their entirety are categorized based on the lowest level input that is significant to the valuation. The District's assessment of the significance of particular inputs to these fair value measurements requires judgment and considers factors specific to each asset or liability.

The District had no investments at August 31, 2020 other than investment pools.

**B. PROPERTY TAXES**

Property taxes are levied by October 1 on the assessed value listed as of the prior January 1 for all real and business personal property located in the District in conformity with Subtitle E, Texas Property Tax Code. Taxes are due on receipt of the tax bill and are delinquent if not paid before February 1 of the year following the year in which imposed. On January 31 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed. Property tax revenues are considered available (1) when they become due or past due and receivable within the current period.

**C. DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE**

Delinquent taxes are prorated between maintenance and debt service based on rates adopted for the year of the levy. Allowances for uncollectible tax receivables within the General Fund is based on historical experience in collecting property taxes. Uncollectible personal property taxes are periodically reviewed and written off, but the District is prohibited from writing off real property taxes without specific statutory authority from the Texas Legislature.

**D. INTERFUND BALANCES AND TRANSFERS**

The composition of interfund balances as of August 31, 2020 is as follows:

Fund	Receivable	Payable	Purpose	Current?
General fund	\$ 36,238		Temporary advances	Yes
Nonmajor governmental funds		36,238	Temporary advances	Yes
Total	<u>\$ 36,238</u>	<u>\$ 36,238</u>		

Interfund transfers for the year ended August 31, 2020 consisted of the following individual amounts:

Fund	Transfers In	Transfers Out	Purpose
Nonmajor governmental funds	\$ 31,987		Operating deficit transfer
Capital projects fund	80,397		Budgeted capital project transfer
General fund		31,987	Operating deficit transfer
General fund		80,397	Budgeted capital project transfer
Total	<u>\$ 112,384</u>	<u>\$ 112,384</u>	

## E. DISAGGREGATION OF RECEIVABLES AND PAYABLES

Receivables at August 31, 2020 were as follows:

	Property Taxes (net)	Other Government	Other Receivables	Total Receivables
Governmental Activities:				
General fund	\$ 50,916	\$ 112,479	\$ 783	\$ 164,178
Major special revenue fund		2,032		2,032
Nonmajor governmental funds		32,645	17,035	49,680
Total Governmental Activities	<u>\$ 50,916</u>	<u>\$ 147,156</u>	<u>\$ 17,818</u>	<u>\$ 215,890</u>

Payables at August 31, 2020 were as follows:

	Accounts	Salaries and Benefits	Other Governments	Total Payables
Governmental Activities:				
General fund	\$ 21,698	\$ 74,291	\$ 1,088	\$ 97,077
Major special revenue fund	2,032			2,032
Nonmajor governmental funds	9,007	16,184		25,191
Total Governmental Activities	<u>\$ 32,737</u>	<u>\$ 90,475</u>	<u>\$ 1,088</u>	<u>\$ 124,300</u>

## F. CAPITAL ASSET ACTIVITY

Capital asset activity for the year ended August 31, 2020, was as follows:

	Balance 8/31/19	Additions	Disposals	Balance 8/31/20
Governmental activities:				
Land	\$ 100,000			\$ 100,000
Buildings and improvements	921,149	161,300		1,082,449
Furniture and equipment	722,642	35,266		757,908
Leased property under capital lease	195,562			195,562
Infrastructure	301,683			301,683
Totals	<u>2,241,036</u>	<u>196,566</u>		<u>2,437,602</u>
Less accumulated depreciation for:				
Buildings and improvements	284,684	29,549		314,233
Furniture and equipment	497,416	44,623		542,039
Leased property under capital lease	14,516	19,555		34,071
Infrastructure	251,782	5,709		257,491
Total accumulated depreciation	<u>1,048,398</u>	<u>99,436</u>		<u>1,147,834</u>
Governmental activities capital assets, net	<u>\$ 1,192,638</u>	<u>\$ 97,130</u>		<u>\$ 1,289,768</u>

Beginning balances were re-characterized for infrastructure assets previously categorized as furniture and equipment along with the related accumulated depreciation expense on those assets. The net beginning capital asset balances did not change but only the balances between furniture and equipment, infrastructure and their respective beginning accumulated depreciation.

Depreciation expense was charged to functions/programs of the primary government as follows:

Governmental activities:

11 - Instruction	\$ 22,045
13 - Curriculum and instructional staff development	1,638
23 - School leadership	528
34 - Student (pupil) transportation	23,405
35 - Food services	5,929
36 - Extracurricular activities	33,510
41 - General administration	3,834
51 - Facilities maintenance and operations	4,190
52 - Security and monitoring services	4,357
Total depreciation expense - governmental activities	<u>\$ 99,436</u>

**G. BONDS AND LONG-TERM NOTES PAYABLE**

The District accounts for long-term debts for maintenance purposes through the General Fund. Long-term debts include notes made in accordance with the provisions of the Texas Education Code Section 45.108. The proceeds from long-term loans are shown in the financial statements as non-current liabilities and principal payments as expenditures in the fund financial statements and reductions in liabilities in the government-wide financial statements.

Bonded indebtedness of the District is accounted for in the Statement of Net Position and current requirements for principal and interest expenditures are accounted for in the General and Debt Service Fund.

A summary of changes in general long-term debt for the year ended August 31, 2020 is as follows:

Description	Interest Rate Payable	Amounts Original Issue	Amounts Outstanding 9/1/19	Issued	Retired	Amounts Outstanding 8/31/20
Loans Payable:						
Maintenance tax notes, series 2019	3.7%	\$ 161,000	\$ 161,000		\$ 11,000	\$ 150,000
Maintenance tax notes, series 2020	2.5%	\$ 110,000		110,000		110,000
Total - Loans Payable			<u>\$ 161,000</u>	<u>\$ 110,000</u>	<u>\$ 11,000</u>	<u>\$ 260,000</u>

Throckmorton Collegiate ISD Maintenance Tax Notes, Series 2019 -

The notes were issued in March, 2019 for the purpose of construction, acquisition and equipment of school facilities and to pay the costs associated with the issuance of the notes and were issued in accordance with Texas law. The original issue was for \$161,000, maturing in various amounts, with interest of 3.7%, and maturing on February 15, 2029.

Throckmorton Collegiate ISD Maintenance Tax Notes, Series 2020 -

The notes were issued in March, 2020 for the purpose of construction and renovation to school facilities and technology equipment and were issued in accordance with Texas law. The original issue was for \$110,000, maturing in various amounts, with interest of 2.5%, and maturing on March 18, 2025.

**H. DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS - BONDS AND LONG-TERM NOTES PAYABLE**

Future debt service requirements are as follows:

Year Ended August 31,	Principal	Interest	Total Requirements
2021	\$ 34,823	\$ 8,316	\$ 43,139
2022	36,395	7,207	43,602
2023	36,984	6,064	43,048
2024	38,588	4,885	43,473
2025	40,210	3,654	43,864
2026-29	73,000	5,531	78,531
Totals	<u>\$ 260,000</u>	<u>\$ 35,657</u>	<u>\$ 295,657</u>

Capital Leases

The Public Property Finance Act gives the District authority to enter into capital leases for the acquisition of personal property. Current principal and interest requirements are recorded in the applicable fund. Commitments under capitalized lease agreements for facilities and equipment provide minimum future rental payments as of August 31, 2020 as follows:

Year ending August 31,	Amount
2021	\$ 37,087
2022	70,624
2023	12,836
Less: incremental borrowing rate of interest	(2,809)
Present value of future lease payments	<u>\$ 117,738</u>

The District has four capital leases obtained to finance the acquisition of vehicles. The leases have imputed interest rates ranging from 0.0% to 4.5% and lease payments totaled \$51,666 for the year (including interest paid of \$4,410).

**I. DEFINED BENEFIT PENSION PLAN**

**Plan Description.** The District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). It is a defined benefit pension plan established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67 and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

**Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position.** Detailed information about the Teacher Retirement System's fiduciary net position is available in a separately-issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <http://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

<u>Net Pension Liability</u>	<u>Total</u>
Total Pension Liability	\$ 209,961,325,288
Less: Plan Fiduciary Net Position	(157,978,199,075)
Net Pension Liability	<u>\$ 51,983,126,213</u>
Net Position as a percentage of Total Pension Liability	75.24%

**Benefits Provided.** TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3 percent (multiplier) times the average of the five highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the three highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than 55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs. Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan description in (A) above.

**Contributions.** Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements, if as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. The 84th Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2019 and 2020.

Contribution Rates		
	2019	2020
Member	7.7%	7.7%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (State)	6.8%	7.5%
Employers	6.8%	7.5%

Current fiscal year District contributions	\$	37,830
Current fiscal year Member contributions	\$	95,277
2019 measurement year NECE contributions	\$	51,689

Contributors to the plan include members, employers and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the General Appropriations Act (GAA).

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of the pension trust fund during that fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers including public schools are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment.
- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding sources, a privately sponsored source.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to:

- When employing a retiree of the Teacher Retirement System the employer shall pay both the member contribution and the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees, and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

**Actuarial Assumptions.** The total pension liability in the August 31, 2019 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2018 rolled forward to August 31, 2019
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Market Value
Actuarial Assumptions:	
Single Discount Rate	7.25%
Long-term expected Investment Rate of Return	7.25%
Inflation	2.3%
Salary Increases	3.05% to 9.05% including inflation
Benefit Changes During the Year	None
Ad hoc Post-Employment Benefit Changes	None

The actuarial methods and assumptions are based primarily on a study of actual experience for the four year period ending August 31, 2018. For a full description of these assumptions, please see the TRS CAFR and actuarial valuation report dated November 9, 2018.

**Discount Rate.** The single discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 7.25%. This was a change in the discount rate from the previous year of 0.343%. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from active members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates set during the 2019 legislative session. It is assumed that future employer and state contributions will be 8.50% of payroll in fiscal year 2020 gradually increasing to 9.55% of payroll over the next several years. This includes all employer and State contributions for active and rehired retirees. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability. The long-term rate of return on pension plan investments is 7.25%. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best-estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. Best estimates of geometric real rates of return for each major asset class included in the Systems target asset allocation as of August 31, 2019 are summarized below:

Asset Class	Target Allocation	Real Return Geometric Basis	Long-Term Expected Portfolio Real Rate of Return*
Global Equity			
U.S.	18%	5.70%	1.04%
Non-U.S. Developed	13%	6.90%	0.90%
Emerging Markets	9%	8.95%	0.80%
Directional Hedge Funds	4%	3.53%	0.14%
Private Equity	13%	10.18%	1.32%
Stable Value			
U.S. Treasuries	11%	1.11%	0.12%
Absolute Return	0%	0.00%	0.00%
Hedge Funds (Stable Value)	4%	3.09%	0.12%
Cash	1%	(0.30)%	0.00%
Real Return			
Global Inflation Linked Bonds	3%	0.70%	0.02%
Real Assets	16%	5.21%	0.73%
Energy and Natural Resources	3%	7.48%	0.37%
Commodities	0%	0.00%	0.00%
Risk Parity			
Risk Parity	5%	3.70%	0.18%
Inflation Expectations			2.30%
Alpha			(0.79)%
Total	<u>100%</u>		<u>7.25%</u>

\* The Expected Contribution to Returns incorporates the volatility drag resulting from the conversion between Arithmetic and Geometric mean returns

**Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis.** The following schedule shows the impact of the Net Pension Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (7.25%) in measuring the 2019 Net Pension Liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (6.25%)	Discount Rate (7.25%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (8.25%)
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability	\$ 624,932	\$ 406,553	\$ 229,625

**Pension Liabilities, Pension Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions.** At August 31, 2020, the District reported a liability of \$406,553 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability	\$ 406,553
State's proportionate share that is associated with the District	<u>767,701</u>
Total	<u>\$ 1,174,254</u>

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2019 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The District's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the District's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2018 thru August 31, 2019.

At August 31, 2019 the District's proportion of the collective net pension liability was 0.0007820874% which was an increase of 0.0001063169% from its proportion measured as of August 31, 2018.

**Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation.** Changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period are as follows:

1. The single discount rate as of August 31, 2018 was a blended rate of 6.907% and that has changed to the long-term rate of return of 7.25% as of August 31, 2019.
2. With the enactment of SB 3 by the 2019 Texas Legislature, an assumption has been made about how this would impact future salaries. It is assumed that eligible active members will each receive a \$2,700 increase in fiscal year 2020. This is in addition to the salary increase expected based on the actuarial assumptions.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2020, the District recognized pension expense of \$199,519 and revenue of \$120,595 for support provided by the State in the Government-Wide Statement of Activities.

At August 31, 2020, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Difference between expected and actual economic experiences	\$ 1,708	\$ 14,116
Changes in actuarial assumptions	126,133	52,124
Differences between projected and actual investment earnings	4,082	
Changes in proportion and differences between the District's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	74,641	80,551
Total as of August 31, 2019 measurement date	\$ 206,564	\$ 146,791
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	37,830	
Total as of August 31, 2020 fiscal year end	<u>\$ 244,394</u>	<u>\$ 146,791</u>

The net amounts of the District's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

Fiscal year ended August 31,	Amount
2021	\$ 19,850
2022	\$ 13,985
2023	\$ 8,458
2024	\$ 11,699
2025	\$ 7,234
Thereafter	\$ (1,453)

**J. DEFINED OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFIT PLANS**

**Plan Description.** The District participates in the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care). It is a multiple-employer, cost-sharing defined benefit Other Post-Employment Benefit (OPEB) plan that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered through a trust by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) Board of Trustees. It is established and administered in accordance with the Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575.

**OPEB Plan Fiduciary Net Position.** Detail information about the TRS-Care's fiduciary net position is available in the separately-issued TRS Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <http://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512)542-6592.



Components of the net OPEB liability of the TRS-Care plan as of August 31, 2019 are as follows:

<u>Net OPEB Liability:</u>	<u>Total</u>
Total OPEB liability	\$ 48,583,247,239
Less: plan fiduciary net position	(1,292,022,349)
Net OPEB liability	<u>\$ 47,291,224,890</u>
Net position as a percentage of total OPEB liability	2.66%

**Benefits Provided.** TRS-Care provides a basic health insurance coverage at no cost to all retirees from public schools, charter schools, regional education service centers and other educational districts who are members of the TRS pension plan. Optional dependent coverage is available for an additional fee.

Eligible non-Medicare retirees and their dependents may pay premiums to participate in the high-deductible health plans. Eligible Medicare retirees and dependents may pay premiums to participate in the Medicare Advantage health plans. To qualify for TRS-Care coverage, a retiree must have at least 10 years of service credit in the TRS pension system.

The General Appropriations Act passed by the 86<sup>th</sup> Legislature included funding to maintain TRS Care premiums at their current level through 2021. The 86<sup>th</sup> legislature also passed SB 1682 which requires TRS to establish a contingency reserve in the TRS-Care fund equal to 60 days of expenditures.

The following premium rates for retirees with Medicare Part A and Part B became effective January 1, 2018 and are reflected in the following table.

TRS-Care Plan Premium Rates Effective January 1, 2018 - December 31, 2021		
	Medicare	Non-Medicare
Retiree or surviving spouse	\$ 135	\$ 200
Retiree and spouse	529	689
Retiree or surviving spouse and children	468	408
Retiree and family	1,020	999

**Contributions.** Contribution rates for the TRS-Care plan are established in state statute by the Texas Legislature, and there is no continuing obligation to provide benefits beyond each fiscal year. The plan is currently funded on a pay-as-you-go basis and is subject to change based on available funding. Funding for the plan is provided by retiree premium contributions and contributions from the state, active employees, and school districts based upon public school district payroll. The TRS board of trustees does not have the authority to set or amend contribution rates.

Texas Insurance Code, section 1575.202 establishes the state’s contribution rate which is 1.25% of the employee’s salary. Section 1575.203 establishes the active employee’s rate which is .65% of pay. Section 1575.204 establishes an employer contribution rate of not less than 0.25 percent or not more than 0.75 percent of the salary of each active employee of the public. The actual employer contribution rate is prescribed by the Legislature in the General Appropriations Act. The following table shows contributions to the TRS-Care plan by type of contributor.

Contribution Rates		
	2019	2020
Active employee	0.65%	0.65%
Non-employer contributing entity (State)	1.25%	1.25%
Employers	0.75%	0.75%
Federal/private funding remitted by employers	1.25%	1.25%

Current fiscal year District contributions	\$	10,881
Current fiscal year member contributions	\$	8,043
2019 measurement year NECE contributions	\$	11,218

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there is an additional surcharge all TRS employers are subject to (regardless of whether or not they participate in the TRS-Care OPEB program). When employers hire a TRS retiree, they are required to pay to TRS-Care, a monthly surcharge of \$535 per retiree.

A supplemental appropriation was received in 2019 for \$73.6 million, which was re-appropriated from amounts received by the pension and TRS-Care funds in excess of the state's actual obligation and then transferred to TRS-Care.

**Actuarial Assumptions.** The total OPEB liability in the August 31, 2019 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

The actuarial valuation of TRS-Care was performed as of August 31, 2018. Update procedures were used to roll forward the total OPEB liability to August 31, 2019.

The actuarial valuation of the OPEB plan offered through TRS-Care is similar to the actuarial valuation performed for the pension plan, except that the OPEB valuation is more complex. All of the demographic assumptions, including rates of retirement, termination, and disability, and most of the economic assumptions, including general inflation and salary increases, used in the OPEB valuation were identical to those used in the respective TRS pension valuation. The demographic assumptions were developed in the experience study performed for TRS for the period ending August 31, 2017.

The following assumptions used for members of TRS are identical to the assumptions employed in the August 31, 2019 TRS annual pension actuarial valuation:

Rates of Mortality	General Inflation
Rates of Retirement	Wage Inflation
Rates of Termination	Expected Payroll Growth
Rates of Disability Incidence	

The active mortality rates were based on 90 percent of the RP-2014 Employee Mortality Tables for males and females with full generational mortality using Scale BB. The post-retirement mortality rates were based on the 2018 TRS of Texas Healthy Pensioner Mortality Tables, with full generational projection using the ultimate improvement rates from the most recently published scale (U-MP).

The initial medical trend rates were 10.25% for Medicare retirees and 7.50% for non-Medicare retirees. There was an initial prescription drug trend rate of 10.25% for all retirees. The initial trend rates decrease to an ultimate trend rate of 4.50% over a period of 13 years.

Additional Actuarial Methods and Assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2018 rolled forward to August 31, 2019
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Inflation	2.30%
Discount Rate	2.63%
Aging Factors	Based on plan specific experience
Expenses	Third-party administrative expenses related to the delivery of health care benefits are included in the age-adjusted claims costs.
Projected Salary Increases	3.05% to 9.05%
Election Rates	Normal Retirement: 65% participation prior to age 65 and 50% participation after age 65. 25% of pre-65 retirees are assumed to discontinue coverage at age 65.
Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes	None

The impact of the Cadillac Tax that is returning in fiscal year 2023 has been calculated as a portion of the trend assumption. Assumptions and methods used to determine the impact of the Cadillac Tax include:

- 2018 thresholds of \$850/\$2,292 were indexed annual by 2.30%.
- Premium data submitted was not adjusted for permissible exclusions to the Cadillac Tax.
- There were no special adjustments to the dollar limit other than those permissible for non-Medicare retirees over 55.

Results indicate that the value of the excise tax would be reasonably represented by a 25 basis point addition to the long-term trend rate assumption.

**Discount Rate.** A single discount rate of 2.63% was used to measure the total OPEB liability. There was a change of (1.06%) in the discount rate since the previous year. Because the plan is essentially a “pay-as-you-go” plan, the single discount rate is equal to the prevailing municipal bond rate. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from active members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the OPEB plan’s fiduciary net position was projected to not be able to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the municipal bond rate was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total OPEB liability. The source of the municipal bond rate was fixed-income municipal bonds with 20 years to maturity that include only federally tax-exempt municipal bonds as reported in Fidelity Index’s “20-year Municipal GO AA Index” as of August 31, 2019.

**Sensitivity of the Net OPEB Liability:**

**Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis** - The following schedule shows the impact of the net OPEB liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used in measuring the net OPEB liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (1.63%)	Current Single Discount Rate (2.63%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (3.63%)
District’s proportionate share of net OPEB liability	\$ 679,221	\$ 562,586	\$ 471,341

**Healthcare Cost Trend Rates Sensitivity Analysis** - The following presents the net OPEB liability of the plan using the assumed healthcare cost trend rate, as well as what the net OPEB liability would be if it were calculated using a trend rate that is one-percentage point lower or one-percentage point higher than the assumed healthcare cost trend rate:

	1% Decrease	Current Healthcare Cost Trend Rate	1% Increase
District’s proportionate share of net OPEB liability	\$ 458,937	\$ 562,586	\$ 701,426

**OPEB Liabilities, OPEB Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to OPEBs.** At August 31, 2020, the District reported a liability of \$562,586 for its proportionate share of the TRS’s net OPEB liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State OPEB support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net OPEB liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net OPEB liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District’s proportionate share of the collective net OPEB liability	\$ 562,586
State’s proportionate share that is associated with the District	747,550
Total	<u>\$ 1,310,136</u>

The net OPEB liability was measured as of August 31, 2019 and the total OPEB liability used to calculate the net OPEB liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The District’s proportion of the net OPEB liability was based on the District’s contributions to the OPEB plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2018 thru August 31, 2019.

At August 31, 2019 the District’s proportion of the collective net OPEB liability was 0.0011896187% which was an increase of 0.0001173676% from its proportion measured as of August 31, 2018.

**Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation.** The following were changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total OPEB liability since the prior measurement period:

1. The discount rate changed from 3.69% as of August 31, 2018 to 2.63% as of August 31, 2019. This change increased the total OPEB liability (TOL).
2. The participation rate for pre-65 retirees was lowered from 70% to 65%. The participation rate for post-65 retirees was lowered from 75% to 50%. 25% of pre-65 retirees are assumed to discontinue their coverage at age 65. There was not lapse assumption in the prior valuation. These changes decreased the TOL.
3. The trend rates were reset to better reflect the plan's anticipated experience. This change increased the TOL.
4. Demographic and economic assumptions were updated based on the experience study performed for TRS for the period ending August 31, 2017. This change increased the total OPEB liability.
5. The percentage of retirees who are assumed to have two-person coverage was lowered from 20% to 15%. In addition, the participation assumption for the surviving spouses of employees that die while actively employed was lowered from 20% to 10%. These changes decreased the TOL.

There were no changes in benefit terms since the prior measurement date.

For the year ended August 31, 2020, the District recognized OPEB expense of \$32,401 and revenue of \$19,702 for support provided by the State.

At August 31, 2020, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflow of Resources	Deferred Inflow of Resources
Differences between expected and actual actuarial experience	\$ 27,600	\$ 92,061
Changes in actuarial assumptions	31,247	151,322
Differences between projected and actual investment earnings	61	
Changes in proportion and difference between the District's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	64,946	73,577
Total as of August 31, 2019 measurement date	\$ 123,854	\$ 316,960
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	10,881	
Total as of August 31, 2020 fiscal year end	<u>\$ 134,735</u>	<u>\$ 316,960</u>

The net amounts of the District's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to OPEB will be recognized in OPEB expense as follows:

Fiscal year ended August 31,	Amount
2021	\$ (33,411)
2022	\$ (33,411)
2023	\$ (33,431)
2024	\$ (33,442)
2025	\$ (33,439)
Thereafter	\$ (25,972)

**K. HEALTH CARE COVERAGE - RETIREES AND ACTIVE EMPLOYEES**

**Retiree Health Care Coverage**

**Plan Description.** The District participates in the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit post-employment health care plan administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. TRS-Care provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retire under the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. The statutory authority for the program is Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575. Texas Insurance Code Section 1575.052 grants the TRS Board of Trustees the authority to establish and amend basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants. The TRS issues a publicly available financial report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information for TRS-Care. That report may be obtained by writing to the TRS Communications Department, 1000 Red River Street, Austin, Texas 78701, by phoning the TRS Communications Department at 1-800-223-8778, or by downloading the report from the TRS Internet Website, [www.trs.state.tx.us](http://www.trs.state.tx.us) under the TRS Publications heading.

**Funding Policy.** Contribution requirements are not actuarially determined but are legally established each biennium by the Texas Legislature. Texas Insurance Code, Sections 1575.202, 203, and 204 establish state, active employee, and public school contributions, respectively. The Contribution Rate for the State was 1.25% for 2018 thru 2020. The contribution rate for the district was 0.75% for 2018 thru 2020. The contribution rate for active employees was 0.65% of the district payroll for 2018 thru 2020. Per Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575, the public school contribution may not be less than 0.25% or greater than 0.75% of the salary of each active employee of the public school. For staff members funded by federal programs, the federal programs are required to contribution 1.25% for 2018 thru 2020.

**Contributions.** Contributions made by the State on behalf of the District are recorded in the governmental funds financial statements as both revenue and expenditures. State contributions to TRS made on behalf to the District's employees as well as the District's required contributions and federal grant program contributions for the years ended August 31, 2020, 2019 and 2018 are as follows:

Contribution Rates and Contribution Amounts						
Year	Member		State		School District	
	Rate	Amount	Rate	Amount	Rate	Amount
2020	0.65%	\$ 8,043	1.25%	\$ 15,467	0.75%	\$ 9,280
2019	0.65%	\$ 6,428	1.25%	\$ 12,362	0.75%	\$ 7,417
2018	0.65%	\$ 5,815	1.25%	\$ 11,183	0.75%	\$ 6,710

**Medicare Part D.** The Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003, which was effective January 1, 2006 established prescription drug coverage for Medicare beneficiaries known as Medicare Part D. One of the provisions of Medicare Part D allows for the TRS-Care to receive retiree drug subsidy payments from the federal government to offset certain prescription drug expenditures for eligible TRS-Care participants. On-behalf payments recognized as equal revenues and expenditures by the District for the years ended August 31, 2020, 2019 and 2018 were \$5,833, \$3,474 and \$3,434, respectively.

The 86<sup>th</sup> Legislative Session of the Texas Legislature appropriated supplemental contributions to the TRS-Care program. Amounts appropriated for fiscal year 2020 totaled \$230.8 million with the District's share of the on behalf contribution recognized during the year as both revenues and expenditures totaling \$2,745

**Active Employee Health Care Coverage**

**Plan Description.** The District participates in TRS Active Care sponsored by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas and administered through Aetna and Caremark (pharmacy). TRS-Active Care provides health care coverage to employees (and their dependents) of participating public education entities. Optional life and long-term care insurance are also provided to active members and retirees. Authority for the plan can be found in the Texas Insurance Code, Title 8, Subtitle H, Chapter 1579 and in the Texas Administrative Code, Title 34, Part 3, Chapter 41. The plan began operations on September 1, 2002. This is a premium-based plan. Payments are made on a monthly basis for all covered employees.

**L. CHANGES IN LONG-TERM LIABILITIES**

Long-term activity for the year ended August 31, 2020, was as follows:

	Beginning Balance	Additions	Retirements	Ending Balance	Due Within One Year
Notes payable	\$ 161,000	\$ 110,000	\$ 11,000	\$ 260,000	\$ 34,823
Capital lease liability	164,994		47,256	117,738	34,733
Net pension liability	371,960	61,967	27,374	406,553	0
Net OPEB liability	535,385	35,644	8,443	562,586	0
Total	<u>\$ 1,233,339</u>	<u>\$ 207,611</u>	<u>\$ 94,073</u>	<u>\$ 1,346,877</u>	<u>\$ 69,556</u>

**M. UNAVAILABLE/UNEARNED REVENUE**

Unavailable and unearned revenue at year-end consisted of the following:

Fund	Unavailable Revenue (levied but uncollected property taxes)	Unearned Revenue (local grants not expended)
General fund	\$ 50,916	
Nonmajor governmental fund		398
Total	<u>\$ 50,916</u>	<u>\$ 398</u>

**N. DUE FROM STATE AND FEDERAL AGENCIES**

The District participates in a variety of federal and state programs from which it receives grants to partially or fully finance certain activities. In addition, the District receives entitlements from the State through the School Foundation and Per Capita Programs. Amounts due from federal and state governments as of August 31, 2020, are summarized below. They are reported on the combined financial statements as Due from Other Governments.

Fund	State Entitlements	Federal Grants	Total
General fund	\$ 87,308		\$ 87,308
Major special revenue fund		2,032	2,032
Nonmajor governmental funds	15,246	17,399	32,645
Net Total Receivables	<u>\$ 102,554</u>	<u>\$ 19,431</u>	<u>\$ 121,985</u>

**O. REVENUE FROM LOCAL AND INTERMEDIATE SOURCES**

During the current year, revenues from local and intermediate sources consisted of the following:

Description	General Fund	Nonmajor Governmental Funds	Total
Property taxes (net of discounts)	\$ 1,525,414		\$ 1,525,414
Penalties, interest and other tax related income	9,053		9,053
Food sales		1,614	1,614
Investment income	4,527		4,527
Extracurricular student activities	7,387	22,911	30,298
Gifts and contributions	225,000	161,136	386,136
Other income	21,026		21,026
Total	<u>\$ 1,792,407</u>	<u>\$ 185,661</u>	<u>\$ 1,978,068</u>

**P. CONSTRUCTION AND OTHER SIGNIFICANT COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES**

The District participates in grant programs which are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Costs charged to the respective grant programs are subject to audit and adjustment by the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, refunds of any money received may be required and the collectibility of any related receivable may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are no significant contingent liabilities related to compliance with the rules and regulations governing the respective grants; therefore, no provision has been recorded in the accompanying basic financial statements for such contingencies.

**Q. JOINT VENTURE SHARED SERVICE ARRANGEMENTS**

The District participates in a shared services arrangement for Special Education services with the Big 4 Special Education Co-op. The District does not account for revenues or expenditures in this program and does not disclose them in these financial statements. The District neither has a joint ownership interest in fixed assets purchased by the fiscal agent, Olney ISD, nor does the district have a net equity interest in the fiscal agent. The fiscal agent is neither accumulating significant financial resources nor fiscal exigencies that would give rise to a future additional benefit or burden to the District. The fiscal agent manager is responsible for all financial activities of the shared services arrangement.

The District also participates in various shared service arrangements with the Education Service Center Region 9. The District does not account for revenues or expenditures in this program and does not disclose them in these financial statements. The Education Service Center Region 9 is the fiscal agent manager and is responsible for all financial activities of the shared service arrangement.

**R. RISK MANAGEMENT**

The District is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts, theft, damage or destruction of assets, errors and omissions, injuries to employees, and natural disasters. During the fiscal year 2020, the District purchased commercial insurance to cover general liabilities. Additional insurance information by coverage type follows.

Property Casualty Program

The District participated in the Texas Association of School Boards Risk Management Fund (the "Fund") with coverage in auto liability, auto physical damage, general liability, property and legal liability. The Fund was created and is operated under the provisions of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code. All members participating in the Fund execute Interlocal Agreements that define the responsibilities of the parties. There were no significant reductions in coverage in the past fiscal year and there were not settlements exceeding insurance coverage for each of the past three years.

The Fund purchases stop-loss coverage for protection against catastrophic and larger than anticipated claims for its auto, liability and property programs. The terms and limits of the stop-loss program vary by line coverage. The Fund uses the services of an independent actuary to determine the adequacy of reserves and fully funds those reserves. For the year ended August 31, 2020, the Fund anticipates the District has not additional liability beyond the contractual obligations for payment of contributions.

Workers' Compensation

During the year, the District met its statutory workers' compensation obligations through participation in the TASB Risk Management Fund (the Fund). The Fund was created and is operated under the provisions of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code. The Fund's Workers' Compensation Program is authorized by Chapter 504, Texas Labor Code. All members participating in the Fund execute Interlocal Agreements that define the responsibilities of the parties. The Fund provides statutory workers' compensation benefits to its members' injured employees.

The Fund and its members are protected against higher than expected claims costs through the purchase of stop loss coverage for any claim in excess of the Fund's self-insured retention of \$2 million. The Fund uses the services of an independent actuary to determine reserve adequacy and fully funds those reserves. As of August 31, 2019, The Fund carries a discounted reserve of \$45,439,534 for future development on reported claims and claims that have been incurred but not yet reported. For the year ended August 31, 2020, the Fund anticipates no additional liability to members beyond their contractual obligations for payment of contributions.

Unemployment Compensation

During the year ended August 31, 2020, the District provided unemployment compensation coverage to its employees through participation in the TASB Risk Management Fund (the "Fund"). The Fund was created and is operated under the provisions of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code. The Fund's unemployment compensation program is authorized by Section 22.005 of the Texas Education Code and Chapter 172 of the Texas Local Government Code. All members participating in the Fund execute interlocal agreements that define the responsibilities of the parties.

The Fund meets its quarterly obligation to the Texas Workforce Commission. Expenses are accrued monthly until the quarterly payment has been made. Expenses can be reasonably estimated; therefore, there is no need for specific or aggregate stop-loss coverage for the unemployment compensation pool. For the year ended August 31, 2020, the Fund anticipates that the District has no additional liability beyond the contractual obligation for payment of contribution.

The Fund engages the services of an independent auditor to conduct a financial audit after the close of each year on August 31. The audit is accepted by the Fund's board of trustees in February of the following year. The Fund's audited financial statements as of August 31, 2020, are available on the TASB Risk Management Fund website and have been filed with the Texas Department of Insurance in Austin.

**S. GENERAL FUND FEDERAL SOURCE REVENUES**

Revenues from federal sources, which are reported in the General Fund, consist of:

Program or Service	CFDA	Amount
School health and related services	N/A	<u>\$ 0</u>

**T. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

Management has evaluated subsequent events through December 16, 2020; the date which the financial statements were available for distribution.

The District has entered into three separate tax limitation agreements with windfarm companies that will add approximately \$627 million in gross taxable value within the District. The agreements limit taxable valuations on the properties for maintenance and operation taxation to \$20 million for each property (or a total of \$60 million). The limitation agreements will go into effect after the first year of construction. The estimated limitation years should begin in fiscal year 2021-22 for two of the projects and in 2022-23 for the third project.

**U. PRIOR PERIOD ADJUSTMENT**

A prior period adjustment was necessary to properly restate beginning net position on Exhibits B-1 and C-3 related to campus activity balances previously classified as "due to student groups". Total amount of restatement was \$25,457.



*REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION*

This page left intentionally blank.

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - GENERAL FUND  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)
	Original	Final		
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 1,582,046	\$ 1,808,246	\$ 1,792,407	\$ (15,839)
5800 State Program Revenues	484,285	485,676	644,266	158,590
5020 Total Revenues	2,066,331	2,293,922	2,436,673	142,751
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	937,976	1,008,476	946,376	62,100
0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services	2,882	2,882	1,962	920
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	6,199	6,199	4,673	1,526
0023 School Leadership	142,851	152,351	147,638	4,713
0031 Guidance, Counseling, and Evaluation Services	62,104	73,104	67,796	5,308
0033 Health Services	650	1,650	2,080	(430)
0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation	87,368	92,068	52,333	39,735
0035 Food Services	-	1,000	-	1,000
0036 Extracurricular Activities	110,706	122,356	104,499	17,857
0041 General Administration	318,362	576,904	535,632	41,272
0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	252,452	318,052	303,933	14,119
0052 Security and Monitoring Services	7,844	16,944	10,309	6,635
Debt Service:				
0071 Principal on Long-Term Debt	25,124	58,274	58,256	18
0072 Interest on Long-Term Debt	22,998	15,648	12,645	3,003
0073 Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	200	200	-
Intergovernmental:				
0091 Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	5,000	7,358	6,763	595
0093 Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	22,000	23,000	22,793	207
6030 Total Expenditures	2,004,516	2,476,466	2,277,888	198,578
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under)	61,815	(182,544)	158,785	341,329
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):				
7914 Non-Current Loans	-	110,000	110,000	-
8911 Transfers Out (Use)	(12,196)	(119,412)	(112,384)	7,028
7080 Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	(12,196)	(9,412)	(2,384)	7,028
1200 Net Change in Fund Balances	49,619	(191,956)	156,401	348,357
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	820,912	820,912	820,912	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 870,531	\$ 628,956	\$ 977,313	\$ 348,357

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET PENSION LIABILITY  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

	Measurement Year Ended August 31,					
	2019	2018	2017	2016	2015	2014
District's Proportion of the Net Pension Liability (Asset)	0.0007820874%	0.0006757705%	0.0008435913%	0.0010105270%	0.0011328000%	0.0005799000%
District's Proportionate Share of Net Pension Liability (Asset)	\$ 406,553	\$ 371,960	\$ 269,735	\$ 381,863	\$ 400,430	\$ 154,899
States Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) associated with the District	767,701	811,455	602,274	930,705	1,013,442	883,773
Total	<u>\$ 1,174,254</u>	<u>\$ 1,183,415</u>	<u>\$ 872,009</u>	<u>\$ 1,312,568</u>	<u>\$ 1,413,872</u>	<u>\$ 1,038,672</u>
District's Covered Payroll	\$ 988,784	\$ 894,640	\$ 1,097,547	\$ 1,343,434	\$ 1,423,797	\$ 1,434,127
District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) as a percentage of its Covered Payroll	41.12%	41.58%	24.58%	28.42%	28.12%	10.80%
Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a percentage of the Total Pension Liability	75.24%	73.74%	82.17%	78.00%	78.43%	83.25%

Note: Only six years of data is presented in accordance with GASB #68, paragraph 138. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S CONTRIBUTIONS FOR PENSIONS  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31,					
	2020	2019	2018	2017	2016	2015
Contractually Required Contribution	\$ 37,830	\$ 26,514	\$ 22,765	\$ 27,560	\$ 32,107	\$ 33,544
Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution	(37,830)	(26,514)	(22,765)	(27,560)	(32,107)	(33,544)
Contribution Deficiency (Excess)	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>
District's Covered Payroll	\$ 1,237,355	\$ 988,784	\$ 894,640	\$ 1,097,547	\$ 1,343,434	\$ 1,423,797
Contributions as a percentage of Covered Payroll	3.06%	2.68%	2.54%	2.51%	2.39%	2.36%

Note: Only six years of data is presented in accordance with GASB #68, paragraph 138. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET OPEB LIABILITY  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

	Measurement Year Ended August 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
District's Proportion of the Net OPEB Liability (Asset)	0.0011896187%	0.0010722511%	0.0012254253%
District's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability (Asset)	\$ 562,586	\$ 535,385	\$ 532,891
State's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability (Asset) associated with the District	<u>747,550</u>	<u>765,062</u>	<u>885,286</u>
Total	<u>\$ 1,310,136</u>	<u>\$ 1,300,447</u>	<u>\$ 1,418,177</u>
District's Covered Payroll	\$ 988,784	\$ 894,640	\$ 1,097,547
District's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability (Asset) as a percentage of its Covered Payroll	56.90%	59.84%	48.55%
Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a percentage of the Total OPEB Liability	2.66%	1.57%	0.91%

Note: Only three years of data is presented in accordance with GASB #75, paragraph 245. "The information for all fiscal years for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S OPEB CONTRIBUTIONS  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31,		
	2020	2019	2018
Contractually Required Contribution	\$ 10,881	\$ 8,285	\$ 7,376
Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution	<u>(10,881)</u>	<u>(8,285)</u>	<u>(7,376)</u>
Contribution Deficiency (Excess)	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>
District's Covered Payroll	\$ 1,237,355	\$ 988,784	\$ 894,640
Contributions as a percentage of Covered Payroll	0.88%	0.84%	0.82%

Note: Only three years of data is presented in accordance with GASB #75, paragraph 245. "The information for all fiscal years for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
*NOTES TO REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION*  
*FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020*

Budget

The official budget was prepared for adoption for all Governmental Fund Types. The budget was prepared in accordance with accounting practices generally accepted in the United States of America. The following procedures are followed in establishing the budgetary data.:

- a. Prior to August 20 of the preceding fiscal year, the District prepares a budget for the next succeeding fiscal year. The operating budget includes proposed expenditures and the means of financing them.
- b. A meeting of the Board is then called for the purpose of adopting the proposed budget after ten days' public notice of the meeting has been given.
- c. Prior to the beginning of the fiscal year, the budget is legally enacted through passage of a resolution by the Board.

Once a budget is approved, it can be amended at function and fund level only by approval of a majority of the members of the Board. Amendments are presented to the Board at its regular meetings.

Each amendment must have Board approval. Such amendments are made before the fact, are reflected in the official minutes of the Board and are not made after fiscal year end as required by law.

Each amendment is controlled by the budget coordinator at the revenue and expenditure function/object level.

Budgeted amounts are as amended by the Board. All budget appropriations lapse at year end.

Encumbrances for goods or purchased services are documented by purchase orders or contracts. Under Texas law, appropriations lapse at August 31, and encumbrances outstanding at that time are to be either cancelled or appropriately provided for in the subsequent year's budget. There were no end-of-year outstanding encumbrances that were provided for in the subsequent year's budget.

Defined Benefit Pension Plan

*Changes of benefit terms.*

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

*Changes of assumptions.*

See Footnote I page 30 for changes in assumptions that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

Other Post-Employment Benefit Plan

*Changes of benefit terms.*

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total OPEB liability during the measurement period.

*Changes of assumptions.*

See Footnote J page 34 for changes in assumptions that affected measurement of the total OPEB liability during the measurement period.



*COMBINING SCHEDULES*

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING BALANCE SHEET  
 NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 AUGUST 31, 2020

Data Control Codes	211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	240 National Breakfast and Lunch Program	244 Career and Technical - Basic Grant	255 ESEA II,A Training and Recruiting
<b>ASSETS</b>				
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ -	\$ 11,718	\$ -	\$ -
1240 Due from Other Governments	4,281	-	-	745
1290 Other Receivables	-	-	-	-
1000 Total Assets	<u>\$ 4,281</u>	<u>\$ 11,718</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 745</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
2110 Accounts Payable	\$ -	\$ 7,776	\$ -	\$ -
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	3,862	3,561	-	674
2170 Due to Other Funds	-	-	-	-
2200 Accrued Expenditures	419	381	-	71
2300 Unearned Revenue	-	-	-	-
2000 Total Liabilities	<u>4,281</u>	<u>11,718</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>745</u>
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>				
3600 Unassigned Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
3000 Total Fund Balances	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
4000 Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	<u>\$ 4,281</u>	<u>\$ 11,718</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 745</u>

266 ESSER -School Emergency Relief	270 ESEA VI, Pt B Rural & Low Income	288 Lone Star Stem Grant	289 Other Federal Special Revenue Funds	410 State Instructional Materials	429 Other State Special Revenue Funds	461 Campus Activity Funds	490 Band Local Grant
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 25,988	\$ -
3,704	1,029	6,432	1,208	-	15,246	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	16,264
<u>\$ 3,704</u>	<u>\$ 1,029</u>	<u>\$ 6,432</u>	<u>\$ 1,208</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 15,246</u>	<u>\$ 25,988</u>	<u>\$ 16,264</u>
\$ -	\$ -	\$ 1,200	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 31	\$ -
3,629	931	-	1,089	-	-	-	1,257
-	-	5,232	-	-	15,246	-	14,989
75	98	-	119	-	-	-	18
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<u>3,704</u>	<u>1,029</u>	<u>6,432</u>	<u>1,208</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>15,246</u>	<u>31</u>	<u>16,264</u>
-	-	-	-	-	-	25,957	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	25,957	-
<u>\$ 3,704</u>	<u>\$ 1,029</u>	<u>\$ 6,432</u>	<u>\$ 1,208</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 15,246</u>	<u>\$ 25,988</u>	<u>\$ 16,264</u>

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING BALANCE SHEET  
 NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 AUGUST 31, 2020

Data Control Codes	491 Early College Grant	492 Dove Grant	495 AVID Local Grant	496 Advisory Committee Grant
<b>ASSETS</b>				
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ -	\$ 398	\$ -	\$ -
1240 Due from Other Governments	-	-	-	-
1290 Other Receivables	-	-	-	771
1000 Total Assets	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 398</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 771</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
2110 Accounts Payable	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	-	-	-	-
2170 Due to Other Funds	-	-	-	771
2200 Accrued Expenditures	-	-	-	-
2300 Unearned Revenue	-	398	-	-
2000 Total Liabilities	<u>-</u>	<u>398</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>771</u>
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>				
3600 Unassigned Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
3000 Total Fund Balances	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
4000 Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 398</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 771</u>

Total Nonmajor Special Revenue Funds	699 Capital Projects Fund	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
\$ 38,104	\$ -	\$ 38,104
32,645	-	32,645
17,035	-	17,035
<u>\$ 87,784</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 87,784</u>
\$ 9,007	\$ -	\$ 9,007
15,003	-	15,003
36,238	-	36,238
1,181	-	1,181
398	-	398
<u>61,827</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>61,827</u>
<u>25,957</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>25,957</u>
<u>25,957</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>25,957</u>
<u>\$ 87,784</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 87,784</u>

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN  
 FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

Data Control Codes	211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	240 National Breakfast and Lunch Program	244 Career and Technical - Basic Grant	255 ESEA II,A Training and Recruiting
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ -	\$ 1,614	\$ -	\$ -
5800 State Program Revenues	-	7,092	-	-
5900 Federal Program Revenues	42,560	85,274	21,946	6,907
5020 Total Revenues	42,560	93,980	21,946	6,907
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	42,560	-	21,946	6,907
0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services	-	-	-	-
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	-	-	-	-
0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation	-	-	-	-
0035 Food Services	-	131,280	-	-
0036 Extracurricular Activities	-	-	-	-
0041 General Administration	-	-	-	-
0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	-	-	-	-
0052 Security and Monitoring Services	-	-	-	-
Capital Outlay:				
0081 Facilities Acquisition and Construction	-	-	-	-
6030 Total Expenditures	42,560	131,280	21,946	6,907
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	-	(37,300)	-	-
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>				
7915 Transfers In	-	31,987	-	-
1200 Net Change in Fund Balance	-	(5,313)	-	-
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	-	5,313	-	-
1300 Increase (Decrease) in Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -

266 ESSER -School Emergency Relief	270 ESEA VI, Pt B Rural & Low Income	288 Lone Star Stem Grant	289 Other Federal Special Revenue Funds	410 State Instructional Materials	429 Other State Special Revenue Funds	461 Campus Activity Funds	490 Band Local Grant
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	22,911	\$ 71,535
-	-	-	-	11,504	80,554	-	-
3,704	9,914	6,432	9,999	-	-	-	-
3,704	9,914	6,432	9,999	11,504	80,554	22,911	71,535
3,704	9,914	2,628	9,999	11,504	59,375	5,773	35,637
-	-	-	-	-	-	1,672	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,523
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	14,966	34,375
-	-	3,804	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	21,179	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
3,704	9,914	6,432	9,999	11,504	80,554	22,411	71,535
-	-	-	-	-	-	500	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	500	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	25,457	-
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	25,957	\$ -

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN  
 FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

Data Control Codes	491 Early College Grant	492 Dove Grant	495 AVID Local Grant	496 Advisory Committee Grant
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 53,462	\$ -	\$ 23,417	\$ 12,722
5800 State Program Revenues	-	-	-	-
5900 Federal Program Revenues	-	-	-	-
5020 Total Revenues	<u>53,462</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>23,417</u>	<u>12,722</u>
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	53,462	-	2,813	5,326
0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services	-	-	-	-
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	-	-	20,604	-
0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation	-	-	-	-
0035 Food Services	-	-	-	-
0036 Extracurricular Activities	-	-	-	-
0041 General Administration	-	-	-	-
0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	-	-	-	7,396
0052 Security and Monitoring Services	-	-	-	-
Capital Outlay:				
0081 Facilities Acquisition and Construction	-	-	-	-
6030 Total Expenditures	<u>53,462</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>23,417</u>	<u>12,722</u>
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	-	-	-	-
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>				
7915 Transfers In	-	-	-	-
1200 Net Change in Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	-	-	-	-
1300 Increase (Decrease) in Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>



Total Nonmajor Special Revenue Funds	699 Capital Projects Fund	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
\$ 185,661	\$ -	\$ 185,661
99,150	-	99,150
186,736	66,103	252,839
471,547	66,103	537,650
271,548	-	271,548
1,672	-	1,672
20,604	-	20,604
1,523	-	1,523
131,280	-	131,280
49,341	-	49,341
3,804	-	3,804
7,396	-	7,396
21,179	-	21,179
-	146,500	146,500
508,347	146,500	654,847
(36,800)	(80,397)	(117,197)
31,987	80,397	112,384
(4,813)	-	(4,813)
5,313	-	5,313
25,457	-	25,457
\$ 25,957	\$ -	\$ 25,957

This page left intentionally blank.

*REQUIRED TEA SCHEDULES*

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE  
FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

Last 10 Years Ended August 31	(1)	(2)	(3)
	Tax Rates		Assessed/Appraised Value for School Tax Purposes
	Maintenance	Debt Service	
2011 and prior years	Various	Various	\$ Various
2012	1.040000	0.000000	115,542,778
2013	1.040000	0.000000	136,912,854
2014	1.040000	0.000000	142,079,495
2015	1.040000	0.000000	157,888,891
2016	1.040000	0.000000	161,621,123
2017	1.040000	0.000000	125,986,497
2018	1.170000	0.000000	122,791,709
2019	1.170000	0.000000	130,978,718
2020 (School year under audit)	1.068350	0.000000	147,219,292
1000 TOTALS			

(10) Beginning Balance 9/1/2019	(20) Current Year's Total Levy	(31) Maintenance Collections	(32) Debt Service Collections	(40) Entire Year's Adjustments	(50) Ending Balance 8/31/2020
\$ 10,237	\$ -	\$ 57	\$ -	\$ (1,613)	\$ 8,567
1,629	-	12	-	-	1,617
2,705	-	192	-	-	2,513
2,864	-	81	-	-	2,783
4,048	-	299	-	-	3,749
4,528	-	(8,089)	-	(8,186)	4,431
6,646	-	(11,482)	-	(11,631)	6,497
8,479	-	2,994	-	(32)	5,453
25,822	-	9,925	-	(588)	15,309
-	1,572,817	1,531,425	-	(5,690)	35,702
<u>\$ 66,958</u>	<u>\$ 1,572,817</u>	<u>\$ 1,525,414</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ (27,740)</u>	<u>\$ 86,621</u>

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
 BUDGET AND ACTUAL - CHILD NUTRITION PROGRAM  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)
	Original	Final		
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 13,250	\$ 13,250	\$ 1,614	\$ (11,636)
5800 State Program Revenues	400	400	7,092	6,692
5900 Federal Program Revenues	64,400	79,512	85,274	5,762
5020 Total Revenues	78,050	93,162	93,980	818
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
Current:				
0035 Food Services	90,246	132,176	131,280	896
6030 Total Expenditures	90,246	132,176	131,280	896
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	(12,196)	(39,014)	(37,300)	1,714
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>				
7915 Transfers In	12,196	39,014	31,987	(7,027)
1200 Net Change in Fund Balances	-	-	(5,313)	(5,313)
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	5,313	5,313	5,313	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 5,313	\$ 5,313	\$ -	\$ (5,313)

*OVERALL COMPLIANCE AND INTERNAL CONTROLS SECTION*

This page left intentionally blank.



## Independent Auditor's Report

### REPORT ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER FINANCIAL REPORTING AND ON COMPLIANCE AND OTHER MATTERS BASED ON AN AUDIT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS PERFORMED IN ACCORDANCE WITH GOVERNMENTAL AUDITING STANDARDS

Board of Trustees  
Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District  
210 College Street  
Throckmorton, Texas 76483

I have audited, in accordance with the auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, the aggregate discretely presented component units, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District (the "District") as of and for the year ended August 31, 2020, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements, and have issued my report thereon dated December 16, 2020.

#### Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

In planning and performing my audit of the financial statements, I considered the District's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) to determine the audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing my opinions on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, I do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control.

A *deficiency in internal control* exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A *material weakness* is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

My consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. Given these limitations, during my audit I identified one deficiency in internal control that I consider to be a material weakness listed as item 2020-1 on the accompanying Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

#### Compliance and Other Matters

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District's financial statements are free of material misstatement, I performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of my audit and, accordingly, I do not express such an opinion. The results of my tests disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards*.

#### Purpose of this Report

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of my testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.



Cameron L. Gulley  
Certified Public Accountant

December 16, 2020

This page left intentionally blank.

**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**SUMMARY SCHEDULE OF PRIOR AUDIT FINDINGS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020**

Finding	Statement of Condition	Material Weakness?	Questioned Costs
2019-1	<p><u>Internal Control Over Financial Reporting</u></p> <p>The District does not have an internal control system designed to provide for the preparation of the financial statements. In conjunction with the completion of our audit, we were required to draft the financial statements and related notes. We also proposed significant journal entries to reverse prior year deferred revenue that was earned during the current year and to record accounts payable amounts that were inadvertently left out.</p> <p><u>Status:</u></p> <p>While the District still did not prepare the financial statements or draft the footnotes for the current year under audit, my opinion is that they have the capacity to do so but choose not to for the sake of convenience. There are adequate internal controls in place to allow for that process to be performed adequately. Additionally, while there were audit adjustments proposed during the current audit, none of them materially affected the revenues, expenditures or balance sheet amounts.</p>	Yes	None
2019-2	<p><u>Compliance - Maintenance of Effort</u></p> <p>The District did not utilize sufficient state and local funds for the education of children with disabilities.</p> <p><u>Status:</u></p> <p>We determined that the finding was not valid and that the District did maintain effort in relation to education of children with disabilities during the 2018-19 fiscal year as well as in the current year under audit.</p>	No	None

This page left intentionally blank.

**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS AND QUESTIONED COSTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020**

I. Summary of Auditor's Results

A. Financial Statements

Type of auditor's report issued:	Unmodified.
Internal control over financial reporting:	
Material weakness(es) identified?	Yes. 2020-1.
Significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses?	None reported.
Noncompliance material to financial statements noted?	No.

B. Federal Awards

Type of auditor's report issued on compliance for major programs:	Unmodified.
Internal control over major programs:	
Material weakness(es) identified?	No.
Significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses?	None reported.
Any audit findings disclosed that are required to be reported in accordance with Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 200?	No.
Major programs are as follows:	
84.282A - Charter School Program High-Quality Replication	\$ 775,781.
Threshold used to distinguish between type A and type B programs:	\$ 750,000.
Auditee qualified as low-risk auditee?	No.

II. Findings Relating to the Financial Statements which are Required to be Reported in Accordance with Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards

2020-1 Internal Control - Failure to Report Employee Benchmark Incentive Pay as Eligible Retirement Compensation

*Criteria* The District is required to report eligible wages paid to all employees part of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). In addition to regular wages, supplemental wages are also eligible and should be reported to TRS. A listing of all eligible and ineligible supplemental wages are posted on the TRS website.

*Statement of Condition* The District failed to report supplemental wages paid to many employees for incentive pay earned as a part of their regular duties and approved as part of the District's pay scale for the current year under audit. We performed tests of a sample number of employees as part of our regular audit procedures and identified that five of the seven employees tested were paid between \$4,600 and \$9,100 in supplemental pay for benchmark incentives met which were not reported as eligible wages to TRS nor were appropriate TRS employee deductions withheld from those supplemental payments.

*Questioned Costs* None.

Cause and Effect The District adopted a new pay scale policy for the current year under audit with the implementation of the Charter School Program High-Quality Replication grant. The new policy set instructional benchmarks for which supplemental compensation is earned upon reaching those benchmarks. Because of the newness of the new pay scale, the District was unaware that the wages were eligible for TRS reporting or withholding. The effect is that an unknown amount of eligible wages was not reported or remitted to TRS during the year under audit.

Recommendations The District should review its current pay policy and also review the wage eligibility guidelines on the TRS website. I also recommend that the District contact its TRS coach to determine whether those supplemental wage payments already made can be retroactively reported and paid to TRS.

III. Findings and Questioned Costs for Federal Awards

None.

**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
*CORRECTIVE ACTION PLAN*  
*FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020*

2020-1    The District will review its current pay policy and also review the wage eligibility guidelines on the TRS website. I also recommend that the District contact its TRS coach to determine whether those supplemental wage payments already made can be retroactively reported and paid to TRS.

Contact representative:            Britnee Woods, business manager  
   210 College Street  
   Throckmorton, Texas 76483  
   (940) 849-2411

Expected implementation date:    Immediately

This page left intentionally blank.



*FEDERAL AWARDS SECTION*

This page left intentionally blank.

**Independent Auditor's Report**

REPORT ON COMPLIANCE FOR EACH MAJOR FEDERAL PROGRAM  
AND ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER COMPLIANCE  
REQUIRED BY THE UNIFORM GUIDANCE

Board of Trustees  
Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District  
210 College Street  
Throckmorton, Texas 76483

**Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program**

I have audited Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District's compliance with the types of compliance requirements described in the *OMB Compliance Supplement* that could have a direct and material effect on each of the District's major federal programs for the year ended August 31, 2020. Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District's major federal programs are identified in the summary of auditor's results section of the accompanying schedule of findings and questioned costs.

***Management's Responsibility***

Management is responsible for compliance with the requirements of laws, regulations, contracts and grants applicable to its federal programs.

***Auditor's Responsibility***

My responsibility is to express an opinion on compliance for each of Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District's major federal programs based on my audit of the types of compliance requirements referred to above. I conducted my audit of compliance in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America; the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States; and the audit requirements of Title 2 U.S. *Code of Federal Regulations* Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (Uniform Guidance). Those standards and the Uniform Guidance require that I plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether noncompliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on a major federal program occurred. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence about the District's compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures as I consider necessary in the circumstances.

I believe that my audit provides a reasonable basis for my opinion on compliance for each major federal program. However, my audit does not provide a legal determination of Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District's compliance.

***Opinion on Each Major Federal Program***

In my opinion, Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District complied, in all material respects, with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on each of its major federal programs for the year ended August 31, 2020.

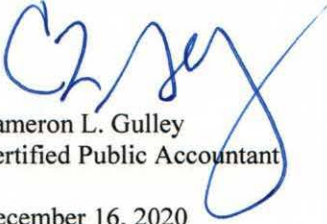
## Report on Internal Control Over Compliance

Management of Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above. In planning and performing my audit of compliance, I considered the District's internal control over compliance with the types of requirements that could have a direct and material effect on each major federal program to determine the auditing procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing an opinion on compliance for each major federal program and to test and report on internal control over compliance in accordance with the Uniform Guidance, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over compliance. Accordingly, I do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control over compliance.

A *deficiency in internal control over compliance* exists when the design or operation of a control over compliance does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program on a timely basis. A *material weakness in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance, such that there is a reasonable possibility that material noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program that is less severe than a material weakness in internal control over compliance, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

My consideration of internal control over compliance was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control over compliance that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. I did not identify any deficiencies in internal control over compliance that I consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

The purpose of this report on internal control over compliance is solely to describe the scope of my testing of internal control over compliance and the results of that testing based on the requirements of the Uniform Guidance. Accordingly, this report is not suitable for any other purpose.



Cameron L. Gulley  
Certified Public Accountant

December 16, 2020

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31 2020

EXHIBIT K-1

(1) FEDERAL GRANTOR/ PASS-THROUGH GRANTOR/ PROGRAM or CLUSTER TITLE	(2) Federal CFDA Number	(3) Pass-Through Entity Identifying Number	(4) Federal Expenditures
<u>U.S. Department of Agriculture</u>			
Passed Through State Department of Agriculture:			
School Breakfast Program *	10.553	N/A	\$ 31,352
National School Lunch Program - cash assistance *	10.555	N/A	49,410
National School Lunch Program - noncash assistance *	10.555	N/A	4,512
Total Passed Through State Department of Agriculture			85,274
Total U.S. Department of Agriculture			85,274
<u>U.S. Department of Education</u>			
Direct Programs:			
ESEA Title V, Part B, Subpart 2 - Rural and Low-Income Schools Program	84.358B	N/A	9,914
Total Direct Programs			9,914
Passed Through State Department of Education:			
ESEA Title I Part A - Improving Basic Programs	84.010A	20610101224901	38,279
ESEA Title I Part A - Improving Basic Programs	84.010A	21610101224901	4,281
Career and Technical Education - Basic Grant	84.048A	204200287110090	21,946
ESEA Title II, Part A - Teacher and Principal Training and Recruiting	84.367A	20694501224901	6,162
ESEA Title II, Part A - Teacher and Principal Training and Recruiting	84.367A	21694501224901	745
Charter School Program High-Quality Replication	84.282A	185901057110016	775,781
Elementary and Secondary School Emergency Relief Fund	84.425D	20521001224901	3,704
ESEA Title IV, Part A, Subpart 1 - Student Support and Academic Enrichment	84.424A	20680101224901	8,791
ESEA Title IV, Part A, Subpart 1 - Student Support and Academic Enrichment	84.424A	21680101224901	1,208
Lone Star STEM Cycle 2, Year 1	84.411B	203929027110001	6,432
Total Passed Through State Department of Education			867,329
Total U.S. Department of Education			877,243
<u>U.S. Department of Homeland Security</u>			
Passed Through Texas Division of Emergency Management:			
Public Assistance Grant, 4416, Texas Severe Storms and Flooding	97.036	4416DRTXP0000001	66,103
Total Passed Through Texas Division of Emergency Management			66,103
Total U.S. Department of Homeland Security			66,103
TOTAL EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS			\$ 1,028,620

\* Clustered programs

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

**THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
*NOTES TO THE SCHEDULE OF EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS*  
*FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020*

1. For all federal programs, the District uses the fund types specified in Texas Education Agency's *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide*. Special revenue funds are used to account for resources restricted to, or designated for, specific purposes by a grantor. Federal and state financial assistance generally is accounted for in a special revenue fund.
2. The accompanying schedule of expenditures of federal awards included the federal grant activity of the District and is presented on the modified accrual basis of accounting. The information in this schedule is presented in accordance with the requirements of the Title 2 U.S. *Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 200 Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards*. Therefore, some amounts presented in this schedule may differ from amounts presented in or used in the preparation of the basic financial statements.
3. The period of availability for federal grant funds for the purpose of liquidation of outstanding obligations made on or before the ending date of the federal project period extended 30 days beyond the federal project period ending date, in accordance with Section H, Period of Availability of Federal Funds, Part 3, OMB Uniform Guidance Compliance Supplement.
4. Non-monetary assistance received from the Commodity Supplemental Food Program is recorded in fair market value of the commodities received and disbursed. The revenue and expenditures are reported in the Child Nutrition Special Revenue Fund.

SCHOOLS FIRST QUESTIONNAIRE

Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School Distric

Fiscal Year 2020

SF1	Was there an unmodified opinion in the Annual Financial Report on the financial statements as a whole?	Yes
SF2	Were there any disclosures in the Annual Financial Report and/or other sources of information concerning nonpayment of any terms of any debt agreement?	No
SF3	Did the school district make timely payments to the Teachers Retirement System (TRS), Texas Workforce Commission (TWC), Internal Revenue Service (IRS), and other government agencies? (If there was a warrant hold not cleared in 30 days, then not timely.)	Yes
SF4	Was the school district issued a warrant hold? (Yes even if cleared within 30 days.)	No
SF5	Did the Annual Financial Report disclose any instances of material weaknesses in internal controls over financial reporting and compliance for local, state or federal funds?	Yes
SF6	Was there any disclosure in the Annual Financial Report of material noncompliance for grants, contracts, and laws related to local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF7	Did the school district post the required financial information on its website in accordance with Government Code, Local Government Code, Texas Education Code, Texas Administrative Code and other statutes, laws and rules in effect at the fiscal year end?	Yes
SF8	Did the school board members discuss the school district's property values at a board meeting within 120 days before the school district adopted its budget?	Yes
SF9	Total accumulated accretion on CABs included in government-wide financial statements at fiscal year end.	

**APPENDIX C**  
**FORM OF CO-BOND COUNSEL'S OPINION**



\_\_\_\_\_, 2021

WE HAVE ACTED as Co-Bond Counsel for THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT (the “*District*”), in connection with the issuance of bonds (the “*Bonds*”) described as follows:

THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2021, dated September 15, 2021, in the principal amount of \$7,675,000 and maturing on August 15 in the years 2022 through 2032, inclusive, and in the years 2034, 2036, 2041, 2046 and 2051. The Bonds are issuable in fully-registered form only, in denominations of \$5,000 of the principal amount or integral multiples thereof, bear interest, are subject to redemption prior to maturity, and may be transferred and exchanged as set out in the Bonds and in the bond order (the “*Order*”) adopted by the Board of Trustees of the District authorizing their issuance. Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined shall have the meanings so assigned in the Order.

WE HAVE ACTED as Co-Bond Counsel for the sole purpose of rendering an opinion (the “*Opinion*”) with respect to the legality and validity of the Bonds under the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas. In such capacity, we have participated in the preparation of, and have examined, a transcript of certain certified proceedings pertaining to the issuance of the Bonds, as described in the Order. The transcript contains certified copies of certain proceedings of the District; certain certifications and representations, and other material facts within the knowledge and control of the District, upon which we rely; and certain other customary documents and instruments authorizing and relating to the issuance of the Bonds. We have also examined executed Bond No. R-1 of this issue. We have also examined such portions of the Constitution and statutes of the State of Texas as we have deemed necessary for the purposes of rendering this Opinion.

WE HAVE NOT BEEN REQUESTED to examine, and have not investigated or verified, any original proceedings, records, data, or other material, but have relied upon the transcript of certified proceedings. We have not assumed any responsibility with respect to the financial condition or capabilities of the District or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds. Our role in connection with the District's Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

BASED UPON SUCH EXAMINATION, it is our opinion that, under existing law:

(A) The transcript of certified proceedings evidences complete legal authority for the issuance of the Bonds in full compliance with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas presently in effect; the Bonds constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the District, enforceable in accordance with the terms and conditions thereof, except to the extent that the rights and remedies of the owners of the Bonds may be limited by laws

heretofore or hereafter enacted relating to bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or other similar laws affecting the rights of creditors of political subdivisions, and the exercise of judicial discretion in appropriate cases; and the Bonds have been authorized and delivered in accordance with existing law; and

(B) The Bonds are payable, both as to principal and interest, from the receipts of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon taxable property located within the District, which taxes have been pledged irrevocably to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds.

OUR OPINION IS BASED ON EXISTING LAW AS OF THE DATE HEREOF, which is subject to change. Such opinion is further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement this Opinion to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention, or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, this Opinion is not a guarantee of result and represents our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law that we deem relevant to such opinion and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above. We express no opinion as to any matters not specifically covered hereby.

Respectfully submitted,

**APPENDIX D**  
**FORM OF SPECIAL TAX COUNSEL'S OPINION**



600 Congress Avenue  
Suite 2200  
Austin, TX 78701  
Telephone: 512-305-4700  
Fax: 512-305-4800  
www.lockelord.com

IN REGARD to the authorization and issuance of the "Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021" (the *Bonds*), dated September 15, 2021, in the aggregate original principal amount of \$7,675,000 we have reviewed the legality and validity of the issuance thereof by the Throckmorton Collegiate Independent School District (the *Issuer*). The Bonds are issuable in fully registered form only, in denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof (within a Stated Maturity). The Bonds have Stated Maturities of August 15 in each of the years 2022 through 2032, inclusive, 2034, 2036, 2041, 2046, and 2051, unless redeemed prior to Stated Maturity in accordance with the terms stated on the face of the Bonds. Interest on the Bonds accrues from the dates, at the rates, in the manner, and is payable on the dates, all as provided in the order (the *Order*) authorizing the issuance of the Bonds. Capitalized terms used herein without definition shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Order.

WE HAVE SERVED AS SPECIAL TAX COUNSEL for the Issuer solely to pass upon the exclusion of the interest on the Bonds from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes and for no other purpose. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not independently investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer. We have not assumed any responsibility with respect to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the sufficiency of the security for or the marketability of the Bonds. Our role in connection with the Issuer's Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

WE HAVE EXAMINED the applicable and pertinent laws of the State of Texas and the United States of America. In rendering the opinions herein we rely upon (1) original or certified copies of the proceedings of the Issuer in connection with the issuance of the Bonds, including the Order; (2) customary certifications and opinions of officials of the Issuer; (3) certificates executed by officers of the Issuer relating to the expected use and investment of proceeds of the Bonds and certain other funds of the Issuer, and to certain other facts solely within the knowledge and control of the Issuer; and (4) such other documentation, including an examination of the Bond executed and delivered initially by the Issuer, and such matters of law as we deem relevant to the matters discussed below. In such examination, we have assumed the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to original copies of all documents submitted to us as certified copies, and the accuracy of the statements and information contained in such certificates.

We express no opinion concerning any effect on the following opinions which may result from changes in law effected after the date hereof.

Legal Opinion of Locke Lord LLP, Austin, Texas, in connection with the authorization and issuance of THROCKMORTON COLLEGIATE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2021

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS OUR OPINION that, assuming continuing compliance after the date hereof by the Issuer with the provisions of the Order and in reliance upon the representations and certifications of the Issuer made in a certificate of even date herewith pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds, under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) interest on the Bonds will be excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the *Code*), of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, pursuant to section 103 of the Code, and (2) interest on the Bonds will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof.

WE EXPRESS NO OTHER OPINION with respect to any other federal, state, or local tax consequences under present law or any proposed legislation resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds. Ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement Benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED on existing law, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service; rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law that we deem relevant to such opinions and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above.

Locke Lord LLP

